## **MATHEMATICS**

**Grade 8** 

**Book 1** 

**CAPS** 

**Learner Book** 





Developed and funded as an ongoing project by the Sasol Inzalo Foundation in partnership with the Ukuqonda Institute.

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 1 2014/07/03 10:53:13 AM

Published by The Ukuqonda Institute

9 Neale Street, Rietondale 0084

Registered as a Title 21 company, registration number 2006/026363/08

Public Benefit Organisation, PBO Nr. 930035134

Website: http://www.ukuqonda.org.za

First published in 2014

© 2014. Copyright in the work is vested in the publisher.

Copyright in the text remains vested in the contributors.

ISBN: 978-1-920705-26-8

This book was developed with the participation of the Department of Basic Education of South Africa with funding from the Sasol Inzalo Foundation.

#### **Contributors:**

Piet Human, Erna Lampen, Marthinus de Jager, Louise Keegan, Paul van Koersveld, Nathi Makae, Enoch Masemola, Therine van Niekerk, Alwyn Olivier, Cerenus Pfeiffer, Renate Röhrs, Dirk Wessels, Herholdt Bezuidenhout

#### Illustrations and computer graphics:

Leonora van Staden, Lisa Steyn Illustration Zhandre Stark, Lebone Publishing Services Computer graphics for chapter frontispieces: Piet Human

Cover illustration: Leonora van Staden

Text design: Mike Schramm

Layout and typesetting: Lebone Publishing Services

**Printed by:** [printer name and address]

 Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb
 2

 2014/07/03
 10:53:13 AM

#### COPYRIGHT NOTICE

#### Your freedom to legally copy this book

This book is published under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 Unported License (CC BY-NC).

You are allowed and encouraged to freely copy this book. You can photocopy, print and distribute it as often as you like. You may download it onto any electronic device, distribute it via email, and upload it to your website, at no charge. You may also adapt the text and illustrations, provided you acknowledge the copyright holders ('attribute the original work').

Restrictions: You may not make copies of this book for a profit-seeking purpose. This holds for printed, electronic and web-based copies of this book, and any part of this book.

For more information about the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 Unported (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, see http://creativecommons.org/ licenses/by-nc/4.0/

All reasonable efforts have been made to ensure that materials included are not already copyrighted to other entities, or in a small number of cases, to acknowledge copyright holders. In some cases this may not have been possible. The publishers welcome the opportunity for redress with any unacknowledged copyright holders.







Except where otherwise noted, this work is licensed under http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Maths\_English\_TG\_gr7\_prelim.indd 3 2014/08/26 02:53:16 PM

# **Table of contents**

## Term 1

| Chapter 1:                         |
|------------------------------------|
| Whole numbers 1                    |
| Chapter 2:                         |
| Integers                           |
| Chapter 3:                         |
| Exponents 51                       |
| Chapter 4:                         |
| Numeric and geometric patterns 77  |
| Chapter 5:                         |
| Functions and relationships93      |
| Chapter 6:                         |
| Algebraic expressions 1105         |
| Chapter 7:                         |
| Algebraic equations 1119           |
| Term 1: Revision and assessment127 |
|                                    |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 4 2014/07/03 10:53:13 AN

## Term 2

| Chapter 8:                           |
|--------------------------------------|
| Algebraic expressions 2 145          |
| Chapter 9:                           |
| Algebraic equations 2                |
| Chapter 10:                          |
| Construction of geometric figures173 |
| Chapter 11:                          |
| Geometry of 2D shapes191             |
| Chapter 12:                          |
| Geometry of straight lines211        |
| Tama 2 Davidan and account           |
| Term 2: Revision and assessment231   |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 6 2014/07/03 10:53:13 AM

# CHAPTER 1 Whole numbers

In this chapter you will learn more about whole numbers, and you will strengthen your skills to do calculations and to solve problems.

| 1.1 | Properties of whole numbers          | 3  |
|-----|--------------------------------------|----|
| 1.2 | Calculations with whole numbers      | 7  |
| 1.3 | Multiples, factors and prime factors | 18 |
| 1.4 | Solving problems                     | 24 |

| A table of products |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |        |        |  |
|---------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--|
| ×                   | 23    | 46    | 79    | 88    | 117    | 124    | 178    | 276    | 348    |  |
| 8                   | 184   | 368   | 632   | 704   | 936    | 992    | 1 424  | 2 208  | 2 784  |  |
| 18                  | 414   | 828   | 1 422 | 1 584 | 2 106  | 2232   | 3 204  | 4 968  | 6 264  |  |
| 27                  | 621   | 1 242 | 2 133 | 2 376 | 3 159  | 3348   | 4 806  | 7 452  | 9 396  |  |
| 34                  | 782   | 1564  | 2 686 | 2 992 | 3 978  | 4216   | 6 052  | 9 384  | 11 832 |  |
| 47                  | 1 081 | 2 162 | 3 713 | 4 136 | 5 499  | 5828   | 8 366  | 12 972 | 16 356 |  |
| 56                  | 1 288 | 2 576 | 4 424 | 4 928 | 6 552  | 6944   | 9 968  | 15 456 | 19 488 |  |
| 67                  | 1 541 | 3 082 | 5 293 | 5 896 | 7 839  | 8308   | 11 926 | 18 492 | 23 316 |  |
| 78                  | 1 794 | 3 588 | 6 162 | 6 864 | 9 126  | 9672   | 13 884 | 21 528 | 27 144 |  |
| 84                  | 1 932 | 3 864 | 6 636 | 7 392 | 9 828  | 10 416 | 14 952 | 23 184 | 29 232 |  |
| 93                  | 2 139 | 4 278 | 7 347 | 8 184 | 10 881 | 11 532 | 16 554 | 25 668 | 32 364 |  |
| Tables              |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |        |        |  |

#### **Tables of sums**

| Tables of sums |       |       |       |        |            |       |       |       |       |  |
|----------------|-------|-------|-------|--------|------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| +              | 154   | 235   | 331   | 456    | <b>572</b> | 638   | 764   | 885   | 921   |  |
| 228            | 382   | 463   | 559   | 684    | 800        | 866   | 992   | 1 113 | 1 149 |  |
| 367            | 521   | 602   | 698   | 823    | 939        | 1 005 | 1 131 | 1 252 | 1 288 |  |
| 473            | 627   | 708   | 804   | 929    | 1 045      | 1 111 | 1 237 | 1 358 | 1 394 |  |
| 539            | 693   | 774   | 870   | 995    | 1 111      | 1 177 | 1 303 | 1 424 | 1 460 |  |
| 677            | 831   | 912   | 1 008 | 1 133  | 1 249      | 1 315 | 1 441 | 1 562 | 1 598 |  |
| 743            | 897   | 978   | 1 074 | 1 199  | 1 315      | 1 381 | 1 507 | 1 628 | 1 664 |  |
| 829            | 983   | 1 064 | 1 160 | 1 285  | 1 401      | 1 467 | 1 593 | 1 714 | 1 750 |  |
| 947            | 1 101 | 1 182 | 1 278 | 1 403  | 1 519      | 1 585 | 1 711 | 1 832 | 1 868 |  |
|                |       |       |       |        |            |       |       |       |       |  |
| +              | 3 154 | 7 235 | 5 331 | 9 456  | 2 5 7 2    | 3 638 | 4 764 | 2 885 | 4921  |  |
| 228            | 3 382 | 7 463 | 5 559 | 9 684  | 2 800      | 3 866 | 4 992 | 3 113 | 5 149 |  |
| 367            | 3 521 | 7 602 | 5 698 | 9 823  | 2 939      | 4 005 | 5 131 | 3 252 | 5 288 |  |
| 473            | 3 627 | 7 708 | 5 804 | 9 929  | 3 045      | 4 111 | 5 237 | 3 358 | 5 394 |  |
| 539            | 3 693 | 7 774 | 5 870 | 9 995  | 3 111      | 4 177 | 5 303 | 3 424 | 5 460 |  |
| 677            | 3 831 | 7 912 | 6 008 | 10 133 | 3 249      | 4 315 | 5 441 | 3 562 | 5 598 |  |
| 743            | 3 897 | 7 978 | 6 074 | 10 199 | 3 315      | 4 381 | 5 507 | 3 628 | 5 664 |  |
| 829            | 3 983 | 8 064 | 6 160 | 10 285 | 3 401      | 4 467 | 5 593 | 3 714 | 5 750 |  |
| 947            | 4 101 | 8 182 | 6 278 | 10 403 | 3 519      | 4 585 | 5 711 | 3 832 | 5 868 |  |

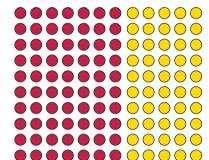
2014/07/03 10:53:13 AM Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 2

## Whole numbers

#### **Properties of whole numbers** 1.1

#### THE COMMUTATIVE PROPERTY OF ADDITION AND MULTIPLICATION

1. Which of the following calculations would you choose to calculate the number of yellow beads in this pattern? Do not do any calculations now, just make a choice.



(a) 
$$7 + 7 + 7 + 7 + 7$$

(b) 
$$10 + 10 + 10 + 10 + 10 + 10 + 10$$

(c) 
$$5+5+5+5+5+5+5+5+5+5$$

(d) 
$$5+5+5+5+5+5+5$$

(e) 
$$7+7+7+7+7+7+7+7+7+7$$

(f) 
$$10 + 10 + 10 + 10 + 10$$

My choice:

2. (a) How many red beads are there in the pattern, and how many yellow beads?

- (b) How many beads are there in the pattern in total?
- 3. (a) Which expression describes what you did to calculate the total number of beads: 70 + 50 or 50 + 70?

(b) Does it make a difference?

- (c) Which expression describes what you did to calculate the number of red beads:  $7 \times 10 \text{ or } 10 \times 7?$
- (d) Does it make a difference?

We say: addition and multiplication are **commutative**. The numbers can be swopped

around and their order does not change the answer. This does not work for subtraction and division,

however.

4. Calculate each of the following:

5 × 8

$$7 \times 6$$

#### THE ASSOCIATIVE PROPERTY OF ADDITION AND MULTIPLICATION

Lebogang and Nathi both have to calculate  $25 \times 24$ . Lebogang calculates  $25 \times 4$  and then multiplies by 6.

Nathi calculates  $25 \times 6$  and then multiplies by 4.

1. Will they get the same answer or not?

If three or more numbers have to be multiplied, it does not matter which two of the numbers are multiplied first.

This is called the **associative property of multiplication**. We also say **multiplication is associative.** 

| 2. | Do the following | calculations | Do not use a | calculator now |
|----|------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
|----|------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|

(a) 4+7+5+6

(b) 
$$7 + 6 + 5 + 4$$

(c) 6+5+7+4 .....

(d) 
$$7 + 5 + 4 + 6$$
 .....

3. (a) Is addition associative?

(b) Illustrate your answer with an example.

4. Find the value of each expression by working in the easiest possible way.

(a)  $2 \times 17 \times 5$ 

(b) 
$$4 \times 7 \times 5$$

24

(c) 75 + 37 + 25

(d) 
$$60 + 87 + 40 + 13$$

89

5. What must you add to each of the following numbers to get 100?

82

44

56

78

77

••••••

6. What must you multiply each of these numbers by to get 1 000?

250

125

25

500

200

50

7. Calculate each of the following. Note that you can make the work very easy by being

smart in deciding how to group the operations.

(a) 
$$82 + 54 + 18 + 46 + 237$$

(b) 
$$24 + 89 + 44 + 76 + 56 + 11$$

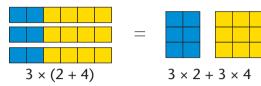
(c)  $25 \times (86 \times 4)$ 

(d) 
$$32 \times 125$$

.....

#### MORE CONVENTIONS AND THE DISTRIBUTIVE PROPERTY

The distributive property is a useful property because it allows us to do this:



Both answers are 18. Notice that we have to use brackets in the first example to show that the addition operation must be done first. Otherwise, we would have done the multiplication first. For example, the expression  $3 \times 2 + 4$  means "multiply 3 by 2; then add 4". It does **not** mean "add 2 and 4; then multiply by 3".

The expression  $4 + 3 \times 2$  also means "multiply 3 by 2; then add 4".

If you wish to specify that addition or subtraction should be **done first**, that part of the expression should be enclosed **in brackets**.

The distributive property can be used to break up a difficult multiplication into smaller parts. For example, it can be used to make it easier to calculate  $6 \times 204$ :

$$6 \times 204$$
 can be rewritten as  $6 \times (200 + 4)$  (Remember the brackets!)  
=  $6 \times 200 + 6 \times 4$   
=  $1\ 200 + 24$   
=  $1\ 224$ 

Multiplication can also be distributed over subtraction, for example to calculate  $7 \times 96$ :

$$7 \times 96 = 7 \times (100 - 4)$$
  
=  $7 \times 100 - 7 \times 4$   
=  $700 - 28$   
=  $672$ 

1. Here are some calculations with answers. Rewrite them with brackets to make all the answers correct.

(a) 
$$8 + 6 \times 5 = 70$$

(b) 
$$8 + 6 \times 5 = 38$$

(c)  $5 + 8 \times 6 - 2 = 52$ 

(c) 
$$5 + 8 \times 6 - 2 = 52$$

(d) 
$$5 + 8 \times 6 - 2 = 76$$

(e)  $5 + 8 \times 6 - 2 = 51$ 

(f) 
$$5 + 8 \times 6 - 2 = 37$$

•••••

2. Calculate the following:

| (a) | 100 × | (10 + | 7)  |
|-----|-------|-------|-----|
| ()  | _ 0 0 | (-0.  | • / |

(b) 
$$100 \times 10 + 100 \times 7$$

( ) 400 (40 =

(c) 
$$100 \times (10 - 7)$$

(d) 
$$100 \times 10 - 100 \times 7$$

.....

3. Complete the table.

| ×  | 8  | 5 | 4 | 9  | 7  | 3 | 6 | 2 | 10 | 11  | 12 |
|----|----|---|---|----|----|---|---|---|----|-----|----|
| 7  |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 3  |    |   |   | 27 |    |   |   | 6 |    |     |    |
| 9  |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 5  |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 8  |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 6  |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 4  |    |   |   |    | 28 |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 2  |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 10 | 80 |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    | 110 |    |
| 12 |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |
| 11 |    |   |   |    |    |   |   |   |    |     |    |

4. Use the various mathematical conventions for numerical expressions to make these calculations easier. Show all your working.

(a) 
$$18 \times 50$$

(b) 
$$125 \times 28$$

(c) 
$$39 \times 220$$

.....

(d) 443 + 2100 + 557

(e) 318 + 650 + 322

(f) 522 + 3003 + 78

••••••••••

•••••

Two more properties of numbers are:

• **The additive property of 0:** when we add zero to any number, the answer is that number.

• The multiplicative property of 1: when we multiply any number by 1, the answer is that number.

### 1.2 Calculations with whole numbers

#### **ESTIMATING, APPROXIMATING AND ROUNDING**

| 1.    | Try to give answers that you trust to these questions, without doing any calculations with the given numbers. |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|       | (a)   | Is 8 × 117 more than 2 000 or less than 2 000?  |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (b)   | Is 27 × 88 more than 3 000 or less than 3 000?  |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (c)   | Is 18 × 117 more than 3 000 or less than 3 000?   | than 3 000  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (d)   | Is $47 \times 79$ more than 3 000 or less than 3 000?   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | ••••••  | •   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| to    | ques  | you have done when you tried to give answers stions 1(a) to (d), is called <b>estimation</b> . To   | An estimate may also be called an <b>approximation</b> .                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | te is to try to get close to an answer without<br>y doing the required calculations with the given numb   | pers.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2.    | Loc   | ok at question 1 again.   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (a)   | The numbers 1 000, 2 000, 3 000, 4 000, 5 000, 6 000, 10 000 are all multiples of a thousand. In each case, w 1 000 that you think is closest to the answer. Write it cline. The numbers you write down are called <b>estimat</b> | rite down the multiple of<br>on the short dotted                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (b)   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (c)   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. (a | (a)   | Use a calculator to find the exact answers for the calculations in question 1, or look up the answers in one of the tables on page 2.   | The difference between an estimate and the actual answer is called the <b>error</b> . |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       |   | Calculate the <b>error</b> in your last approximation of each of the answers in question 1.   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (b)   | What was your smallest error?   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| 4. | Think again about what you did in question 2. In $2(a)$ you tried to approximate the answers <b>to the nearest</b> 1 000. In $2(c)$ you tried to approximate the answers to the nearest 100. Describe what you tried to achieve in question $2(b)$ . |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5. | 5. Estimate the answers for each of the following products and sums. Try to approximathe answers for the products to the nearest thousand, and for the sums to the nearest hundred. Use the first line in each question to do this.                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (a) 84 × 178 (b) 677 + 638   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (c) 124 × 93 (d) 885 + 473   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (e) 79 × 84 (f) 921 + 367  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (g) $56 \times 348$ (h) $764 + 829$  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6. | Use a calculator to find the exact answers for the calculations in question 5, or look up the answers in the tables on page 2. Calculate the error in each of your approximations. Use the second line in each question to do this.                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | alculating with "easy" numbers that are close to given numbers is a good way to obtain proximate answers, for example:   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1  | To approximate $764 + 829$ one may calculate $800 + 800$ to get the approximate answer 1 600, with an error of 7.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| •  | To approximate $84 \times 178$ one may calculate $80 \times 200$ to get the approximate answer $16000$ , with an error of $1048$ .   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7. | Calculate with "easy" numbers close to the given numbers to produce approximate answers for each product below. <b>Do not use a calculator</b> . When you have made your approximations, look up the precise answers in the top table on page 2.     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (a) $78 \times 46$ (b) $67 \times 88$  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (c) 34 × 276 (d) 78 × 178  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### **ROUNDING OFF AND COMPENSATING**

1. (a) Approximate the answer for 386 + 3 435, by rounding both numbers off to the nearest hundred, and adding the rounded numbers.

The word **compensate** means to do things that will remove damage.

(b) Because you rounded 386 up to 400, you introduced an error of 14 in your approximate answer. What error did you introduce by rounding 3 435 down to 3 400?

(c) What was the combined (total) error introduced by rounding both numbers off before calculating?

(d) Use your knowledge of the total error to correct your approximate answer, so that you have the correct answer for 386 + 3435.

What you have done in question 1 to find the correct answer for 386 + 3 435 is called **rounding off and compensating**. By rounding the numbers off you introduced errors. You then compensated for the errors by making adjustments to your answer.

2. Round off and compensate to calculate each of the following accurately:

(a) 
$$473 + 638$$

(b) 
$$677 + 921$$

.....

Subtraction can also be done in this way. For example, to calculate R5 362 – R2 687, you may round R2 687 up to R3 000. The calculation can proceed as follows:

- Rounding R2 687 up to R3 000 can be done in two steps: 2687 + 13 = 2700, and 2700 + 300 = 3000. In total, 313 is added.
- 313 can now be added to 5 362 too: R5 362 + 313 = 5 675.
- Instead of calculating R5 362 R2 687, which is a bit difficult, you may calculate R5 675 R3 000. This is easy: R5 675 R3 000 = R2 675.

This means that R5 362 - R2 687 = R2 675, because R5 362 - R2 687 = (R5 362 + R313) - (R2 687 + R313).

#### **ADDING NUMBERS IN PARTS WRITTEN IN COLUMNS**

Numbers can be added by thinking of their **parts** as we say the numbers.

For example, we say 4 994 as four thousand nine hundred and ninety-four.

This can be written in expanded notation as 4000 + 900 + 90 + 4.

Similarly, we can think of 31 837 as  $30\,000 + 1\,000 + 800 + 30 + 7$ .

31 837 + 4 994 can be calculated by working with the various kinds of parts separately. To make this easy, the numbers can be written below each other so that the units are below the units, the tens below the tens and so on, as shown on the right.

31 837 4994

| We write only this: | In your mind you can see this: |       |     |    |  |   |  |  |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|-------|-----|----|--|---|--|--|
| 31 837              | 30 000                         | 1 000 | 800 | 30 |  | 7 |  |  |
| 4 994               |                                | 4 000 | 900 | 90 |  | 4 |  |  |

The numbers in each column can be added to get a new set of numbers.

| 31 837        | 30 000   | 1 000 | 800   | 30  | 7  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------|--|-------|-------|-----|----|--|--|--|--|
| 4 994         |  | 4 000 | 900   | 90  | 4  |  |  |  |  |
| 11            |  |       |       |     | 11 |  |  |  |  |
| 120           |  |       |       | 120 |    |  |  |  |  |
| 1 700         |  |       | 1 700 |     |    |  |  |  |  |
| 5 000         |  | 5 000 |       |     |    |  |  |  |  |
| <u>30 000</u> | 30 000   |       |       |     |    |  |  |  |  |
| 36 831        | It is easy to add the new set of numbers to get the ar |       |       |     |    |  |  |  |  |

It is easy to add the new set of numbers to get the answer.

The work may start with the 10 000s or any other parts. Starting with the units as shown above makes it possible to do more of the work mentally, and write less, as shown below.

| 31 837 | To achieve this, only the units digit 1 of the 11 is written in |
|--------|---|
| 4 994  | the first step. The 10 of the 11 is remembered and added to     |
| 36 831 | the 30 and 90 of the tens column, to get 130.                   |

We say the 10 is **carried** from the units column to the tens column. The same is done when the tens parts are added to get 130: only the digit "3" is written (in the tens column, so it means 30), and the 100 is carried to the next step.

| _ |             |            |                  |                       |
|---|-------------|------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | Calculate e | ach of the | tollowing withou | ut using a calculatoi |
|   |             |            |                  |                       |

| (a) 4 638 + 2 66/                       | (b) 748 + 7 246                         |
|---|---|
| ••••••••••••                            | •••••                                   |
| • | ••••••                                  |
| • | • |

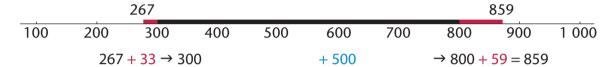
| 2. | Impilo Enterprises plans a new computerised training facility in their existing building. The training manager has to keep the total expenditure budget under R1 million. This is what she has written so far: |                           |                         |   |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
|    | Arch   | itects and builders       | 3                       | R 102 700                               |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | ing and carpeting         |                         | R 42 600                                |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | rity doors and blin       |                         | R 52 000                                |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | projector                 |                         | R 4800                                  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | ew secretary chairs       | 8                       | R 50 400                                |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | esks for work statio      |                         | R123 000                                |  |  |  |  |
|    | 1 des  | k for presenter           |                         | R 28 000                                |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | ew computers              |                         | R300 000                                |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | olour laser printers      |                         | R 38 980                                |  |  |  |  |
|    | Work out the total cost  |                           |                         | er nas budgeted for.                    |  |  |  |  |
| 3. | Calculate each of the fo   | ollowing without u        | ising a calculator      | :                                       |  |  |  |  |
|    | (a) 7828 + 6284  |                           | (b) 7 826 + 888         | + 367                                   |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••  | • • • • • • • • • • •     | • • • • • • • • • • •   | • |  |  |  |  |
|    |  |                           |                         |   |  |  |  |  |
|    |  |                           |                         |   |  |  |  |  |
|    | ••••••   | • • • • • • • • • • • •   | • • • • • • • • • • •   | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •   |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | • • • • • • • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • • • |   |  |  |  |  |
|    | (c) $657 + 32890 + 654$  | 2                         | (d) 6 666 + 3 33        | 3+1                                     |  |  |  |  |
|    | •  | • • • • • • • • • • •     | • • • • • • • • • • • • |   |  |  |  |  |

#### **METHODS OF SUBTRACTION**

There are many ways to find the difference between two numbers. For example, to find the difference between 267 and 859 one may think of the numbers as they may be written on a number line.



We may think of the distance between 267 and 859 as three steps: from 267 to 300, from 300 to 800, and from 800 to 859. How big are each of these three steps?



The above shows that 859 - 267 is 33 + 500 + 59.

- 1. Calculate 33 + 500 + 59 to find the answer for 859 267.
- ••••••••••••••••••
- 2. Calculate each of the following. You may think of working out the distance between the two numbers as shown above, or use any other method you prefer.

Do not use a calculator now.

(a) 
$$823 - 456$$

(c) 
$$3045 - 2572$$

(d) 
$$5131 - 367$$

You can use the tables of sums on page 2 to check your answers for question 2.

Like addition, subtraction can also be done by working with the different parts in which we say numbers. For example,  $8\,764 - 2\,352$  can be calculated as follows:

8 thousand - 2 thousand = 6 thousand

7 hundred - 3 hundred = 4 hundred

$$6 \text{ tens} - 5 \text{ tens} = 1 \text{ ten}$$

$$4 \text{ units} - 2 \text{ units} = 2 \text{ units}$$

So, 
$$8764 - 2352 = 6412$$

Subtraction by parts is more difficult in some cases, for example 6 213 – 2 758:

 $6\,000 - 2\,000 = 4\,000$ . This step is easy, but the following steps cause problems:

$$200 - 700 =$$
?

$$10 - 50 = ?$$

$$3 - 8 = ?$$

Fortunately, the parts and sequence of work may be rearranged to overcome these problems, as shown below:

One way to overcome these problems is to work with negative numbers: 200 - 700 = (-500) 10 - 50 = (-40) 3 - 8 = (-5) $4\ 000 - 500 \rightarrow 3\ 500 - 45 =$ 

instead of we may do
$$3-8 = ? 13-8 = .....$$

$$10-50 = ? 100-50 = .....$$

$$200-700 = ? 1100-700 = .....$$

$$6000-2000 = ? 5000-2000 = .....$$

"borrow" 10 from below
"borrow" 100 from below
"borrow" 1 000 from below

This reasoning can also be set out in columns:

| instead of |     |    | we may do |       |       | but write only this |    |   |   |   |   |
|------------|-----|----|-----------|-------|-------|---------------------|----|---|---|---|---|
| 6 000      | 200 | 10 | 3         | 5 000 | 1 100 | 100                 | 13 | 6 | 2 | 1 | 3 |
| 2 000      | 700 | 50 | 8         | 2 000 | 700   | 50                  | 8  | 2 | 7 | 5 | 8 |
|            |     |    |           | 3 000 | 400   | 50                  | 5  | 3 | 4 | 5 | 5 |

- 3. (a) Complete the above calculations and find the answer for  $6\,213-2\,758$ .
  - (b) Use the borrowing technique to calculate 823 376 and 6 431 4 968.

•••••

4. Check your answers in question 3(b) by doing addition.

.....

| wi<br>cc | Tith some practice, you can learn to subtract using borrowing ithout writing all the steps. It is convenient to work in blumns, as shown on the right for calculating 213 – 2 758. | 2 758<br>5<br>50                                 |
|----------|--|--|
|          | In fact, by doing more work mentally, you may learn to savore paper by writing even less as shown below.  6 213 2 758 3 455  | e 400<br>3 000<br>3 455                          |
| yc       | o not use a calculator when you do question 5, because the out to come to understand methods of subtraction. What you less you to understand <b>algebra</b> better.                |  |
| 5.       | Calculate each of the following:   |  |
|          | (a) 7342 - 3877 (b) 8653 - 1856  | (c) 5 671 – 4 528                                |
|          |  | •          |
|          |  | •          |
|          |  | •          |
|          | ou may use a calculator to do questions 6 and 7.  Estimate the difference between the two car prices in each or closer. Then calculate the difference.                             | case to the nearest R1 000                       |
|          | (a) R102 365 and R98 128 (b) R63 378 and   | l R96 889  |
|          | •••••  | ••••••   |
|          | •••••  | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •            |
|          | •••••  | ••••••   |
|          | ••••••   | •          |
| 7.       |  | or 1 000. Then calculate.<br>(c) 65 244 – 39 427 |
|          | •••••  | •          |
|          | •••••  | •          |
|          |  |  |

#### A METHOD OF MULTIPLICATION

 $7 \times 4598$  can be calculated in parts, as shown here:

$$7 \times 4000 = 28000$$
  
 $7 \times 500 = 3500$   
 $7 \times 90 = 630$   
 $7 \times 8 = 56$ 

The four partial products can now be added to get the answer, which is 32 186. It is convenient to write the work in vertical columns for units, tens, hundreds and so on, as shown on the right.

3 5 0 0 2 8 0 0 0 3 2 1 8 6

The answer can be produced with less writing, by "carrying" parts of the partial answers to the next column, when working from right to left in the columns. Only the 6 of the product  $7 \times 8$  is written down instead of 56. The 50 is kept in mind, and added to the 630 obtained when  $7 \times 90$  is calculated in the next step.

4 5 9 8 7

1. Calculate each of the following. Do not use a calculator now.

(a) 
$$27 \times 649$$

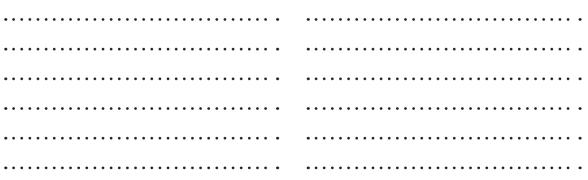
(c) 
$$348 \times 93$$

| •••••                                   | •••••                                   | ••••                                    |
|---|---|---|
| •••••                                   | •••••                                   | • |
| •••••                                   | •••••                                   | • |
| •••••                                   | •••••                                   | • |
| • | • | • |
| • | • | • |
|   | • |   |

- 2. Use your calculator to check your answers for question 1. Redo the questions for which you had the wrong answers.
- 3. Calculate each of the following. Do not use a calculator now.

(a) 
$$67 \times 276$$

(b) 
$$84 \times 178$$



4. Use the product table on page 2 or a calculator to check your answers for question 3. Redo the questions for which you had the wrong answers.

#### **LONG DIVISION**

1. The municipal head gardener wants to buy young trees to plant along the main street of the town. The young trees cost R27 each, and an amount of R9 400 has been budgeted for trees. He needs 324 trees. Do you think he has enough money?

•••••

- 2. (a) How much will 300 trees cost?
  - (b) How much money will be left if 300 trees are bought?
  - (c) How much money will be left if 20 more trees are bought?

The municipal gardener wants to work out exactly how many trees, at R27 each, he can buy with the budgeted amount of R9 400. His thinking and writing are described below.

#### Step 1

What he writes: What he thinks:

27 9 400 I want to find out how many chunks of 27 there are in 9 400.

#### Step 2

What he writes: What he thinks:

I think there are at least 300 chunks of 27 in 9 400.

27 9 400

 $8\ 100$   $300 \times 27 = 8\ 100$ . I need to know how much is left over.

1 300 I want to find out how many chunks of 27 there are in 1 300.

**Step 3** (He has to rub out the one "0" of the 300 on top, to make space.)

What he writes: What he thinks:

I think there are at least 40 chunks of 27 in 1 300.

27 9 400

8 100

1 300

 $\underline{1\ 080}$   $40 \times 27 = 1\ 080$ . I need to know how much is left over.

*I want to find out how many chunks of 27 there are in 220.* 

Perhaps I can buy some extra trees.

#### **Step 4** (He rubs out another "0".)

What he writes: What he thinks:

348 I think there are at least 8 chunks of 27 in 220.

27 | 9 400 8 100

0 100

1 300

1 080 220

 $8 \times 27 = 216$ 

4 So, I can buy 348 young trees and will have R4 left.

**Do not use a calculator to do questions 3 and 4**. The purpose of this work is for you to develop a good understanding of how division can be done. Check all your answers by doing multiplication.

| 3. | (a) Graham bought 64 goats, all at the same price. He paid R5 440 in total. What was the price for each goat? Your first step can be to work out how much he would have paid if he paid R10 per goat, but you can start with a bigger step if you wish. | (b) Mary has R2 850 and she wants to buy candles for her sister's wedding reception. The candles cost R48 each. How many candles can she buy? |
|----|---|---|
|    | •••••   | •   |
|    | ••••••  | •••••   |
|    | ••••••  | •••••   |
|    | ••••••  | •   |
|    | ••••••  | •••••   |
| 4. | Calculate each of the following, without  | using a calculator:   |
|    | (a) $7234 \div 48$  | (b) 3 267 ÷ 24  |
|    | •••••   | ••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••••••••   | •••••   |
|    | •••••   | ••••••  |
|    | •••••   | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
|    | •••••   | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
|    | •••••   | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
|    | (c) 9 500 ÷ 364   | (d) 8 347 ÷ 24  |
|    |   | •••••••••   |
|    | ••••••  | ••••••••••••  |
|    | ••••••••••••  | ••••••••••••  |
|    | ••••••  | ••••••••••••  |
|    | ••••••  | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
|    | •••••   | •   |

### 1.3 Multiples, factors and prime factors

#### **MULTIPLES AND FACTORS**

1. The numbers 6; 12; 18; 24; ... are **multiples** of 6. The numbers 7; 14; 21; 28; ... are **multiples** of 7.

If n is a natural number, 6n represents the multiples of 6.

- (a) What is the 100th number in each sequence above?
- (b) Is 198 a number in the first sequence?
- (c) Is 175 a number in the second sequence?

Of which numbers is 20 a multiple?

$$20 = 1 \times 20 = 2 \times 10 = 4 \times 5 = 5 \times 4 = 10 \times 2 = 20 \times 1$$
  
Factors come in pairs. The following pairs are factors of 20:

20 is a multiple of 1; 2; 4; 5; 10 and 20 and all of these numbers are factors of 20.



2. A rectangle has an area of 30 cm. What are the possible lengths of the sides of the rectangle in centimetres if the lengths of the sides are natural numbers?

3. Are 4; 8; 12 and 16 factors of 48? Simon says that all multiples of 4 smaller than 48 are factors of 48. Is he right?

4. We have defined factors in terms of the product of *two* numbers. What happens if we have a product of *three* or more numbers, for example  $210 = 2 \times 3 \times 5 \times 7$ ?

(a) Explain why 2; 3; 5 and 7 are factors of 210.

•••••

(b) Are  $2 \times 3$ ;  $3 \times 5$ ;  $5 \times 7$ ;  $2 \times 5$  and  $2 \times 7$  factors of 210?

.....

(c) Are  $2 \times 3 \times 5$ ;  $3 \times 5 \times 7$  and  $2 \times 5 \times 7$  factors of 210?

•••••

5. Is 20 a factor of 60? What factors of 20 are also factors of 60?

.....

#### PRIME NUMBERS AND COMPOSITE NUMBERS

| 1. | Express each of the following numbers as product of as many factors as possible, increpeated factors. Do not use 1 as a factor.            | The number 36 can be formed as $2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3$ . Because 2 and 3 are used twice, they are called <b>repeated factors</b> of 36. |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
|    | (a) 66   | (b) 67   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (c) 68   | (d) 69   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (e) 70   | (f) 71   | ••••••••••                              |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (g) 72   | (h) 73   | • |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | • • • • • • • • • •  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | •••••  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2. | Which of the numbers in question 1 cannot of two whole numbers, except as the proc   | •  | -                                       |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | A number that cannot be expressed as a p<br>two whole numbers, except as the product<br>1 × the number itself, is called a <b>prime nu</b> | ct   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. | Which of the numbers in question 1 are p   | orime?   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | <b>Composite numbers</b> are natural numbers more than two different factors. The sequence composite numbers is 4; 6; 8; 9; 10; 12;        |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4. | Are the statements below true or false? If you answer "false", explain why.  (a) All prime numbers are odd numbers.                        |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (b) All composite numbers are even numbers.  |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (c) 1 is a prime number.   |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (d) If a natural number is not prime, the  |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |

CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS 19

|    | (e) 2 is a composite number.   |
|----|--|
|    | (f) 785 is a prime number.   |
|    | (g) A prime number can only end in 1; 3; 7 or 9.   |
|    | (h) Every composite number is divisible by at least one prime number.  |
|    |  |
| 5. | We can find out whether a given number is prime by systematically checking whether the primes 2; 3; 5; 7; 11; 13; are factors of the given number or not. To find possible factors of 131, we need to consider only the primes 2; 3; 5; 7 and 11. Why not 13; 17; 19;? |
|    | ••••••   |
| 6. | Determine whether the following numbers are prime or composite. If the number is composite, write down at least two factors of the number (besides 1 and the number itself).   |
|    | (a) 221 (b) 713  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |

#### **PRIME FACTORISATION**

To find all the factors of a number you can write the number as the product of prime factors, first by writing it as the product of two convenient (composite) factors and then by splitting these factors into smaller factors until all factors are prime. Then you take all the possible combinations of the products of the prime factors.

Every composite number can be expressed as the product of prime factors and this can happen in only one way.

**Example:** Find the factors of 84.

Write 84 as the product of prime factors by starting with different known factors:

$$84 = 4 \times 21$$
 or  $84 = 7 \times 12$  or  $84 = 2 \times 42$   
=  $2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 7$  =  $7 \times 3 \times 4$  =  $2 \times 6 \times 7$   
=  $7 \times 3 \times 2 \times 2$  =  $2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 7$ 

A **more systematic way** of finding the prime factors of a number would be to start with the prime numbers and try the consecutive prime numbers 2; 3; 5; 7; ... as possible factors. The work may be set out as shown below.

$$1430 = 2 \times 5 \times 11 \times 13$$

$$2457 = 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 7 \times 13$$

We can use exponents to write the products of prime factors more compactly as products of powers of prime factors.

$$2457 = 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 7 \times 13 = 3^{3} \times 7 \times 13$$

$$72 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 = 2^{3} \times 3^{2}$$

$$1500 = 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5 = 2^{2} \times 3 \times 5^{3}$$

1. Express the following numbers as the product of powers of primes:

2. Find the prime factors of the numbers below.

32 124 36

42

345

182

#### **COMMON MULTIPLES AND FACTORS**

- 1. Is  $4 \times 5$  a multiple of 4? Is  $4 \times 5$  a multiple of 5?
- 2. Comment on the following statement:
  The product of numbers is a multiple of each of the numbers in the product.

We use **common multiples** when fractions with different denominators are added.

To add  $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{3}{4}$ , the common denominator is  $3 \times 4$ , so the sum becomes  $\frac{8}{12} + \frac{9}{12}$ .

In the same way, we could use  $6 \times 8 = 48$  as a common denominator to add  $\frac{1}{6} + \frac{3}{8}$ , but 24 is the **lowest common multiple** (**LCM**) of 6 and 8.

**Prime factorisation** makes it easy to find the lowest common multiple or highest common factor.

When we simplify a fraction, we divide the same number into the numerator and the denominator. For the simplest fraction, use the **highest common factor** (**HCF**) to divide into both numerator and denominator.

The HCF is divided into the numerator and the denominator to write the fraction in its **simplest form**.

So 
$$\frac{36}{144} = \frac{2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3}{2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3} = \frac{1}{4}$$

Use prime factorisation to determine the LCM and HCF of 32, 48 and 84 in a systematic  $\,$ 

way:  $32 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 2^5$ 

 $48 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 = 2^4 \times 3$ 

 $84 = 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 7 \qquad = 2^2 \times 3 \times 7$ 

The LCM is a **multiple**, so all of the factors of all the numbers must divide into it.

All of the factors that are present in the three numbers must also be factors of the LCM, even if it is a factor of only one of the numbers. But because it has to be the lowest common multiple, no unnecessary factors are in the LCM.

The highest power of each factor is in the LCM, because then all of the other factors can divide into it. In 32, 48 and 84, the highest power of 2 is 2<sup>5</sup>, the highest power of 3 is 3 and the highest power of 7 is 7.

$$LCM = 2^5 \times 3 \times 7 = 672$$

The HCF is a common factor. Therefore, for a factor to be in the HCF, it must be a factor of *all* of the numbers. 2 is the only number that appears as a factor of all three numbers. The lowest power of 2 is  $2^2$ , so the HCF is  $2^2$ .

| 3. | 3. Determine the LCM and the HCF of the numbers in each case.                               |                |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|----------------|--|--|--|--|--|
|    | (a) 24; 28; 42  | (b) 17; 21; 35 |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••          |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | •••••          |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••          |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••          |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | •••••          |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (c) 75; 120; 200  | (d) 18; 30; 45 |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | ••••••         |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | ••••••         |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••••••••    |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••••••      |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | ••••••         |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | NVESTIGATE PRIME NUMBERS  |                |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |                |  |  |  |  |  |
| Y  | ou may use a calculator for this investigation  |                |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | ou may use a calculator for this investigation.  Find all the prime numbers between 110 and | 130.           |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | ou may use a calculator for this investigation Find all the prime numbers between 110 and   | 130.           |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | 130.           |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | 130.           |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  |                |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1  |   |                |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  |                |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  |                |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  |                |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  | 230.           |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  | 230.           |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  | 230.           |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2  | . Find all the prime numbers between 110 and  | 230.           |  |  |  |  |  |

## 1.4 Solving problems

#### **RATE AND RATIO**

You may use a calculator for the work in this section.

| 1. | Tree plantations in the Western Cape are to be cut down in favour of natural vegetation. There are roughly 3 000 000 trees on plantations in the area and it is possible to cut them down at a <b>rate</b> of 15 000 trees per day with the labour available. How many working days will it take before all the trees will be cut down? |               |   |                        |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---------------|---|------------------------|--|--|--|--|
|    | •••••   | • • • • • • • | •   |                        |  |  |  |  |
|    | Instead of saying " per day", people often say "a <b>rate</b> of per day". Speed is a way to describe the of movement.  |               | The word <b>per</b> is of to describe a rate mean for every, for in, out of, or every | and can<br>r, in each, |  |  |  |  |
| 2. | A car travels a distance of 180 km in 2 hours on a scan it travel in 3 hours at the same speed?   | traight r     | road. How many  | kilometres             |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | • • • • • •   | •   | , <b></b>              |  |  |  |  |
| 3. | Thobeka wants to order a book that costs \$56,67. R7,90 to a dollar. What is the price of the book in   |               | l-dollar exchange   | e rate is              |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | • • • • • •   | •   |                        |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | • • • • • •   | •   |                        |  |  |  |  |
|    |   | • • • • • •   | •   |                        |  |  |  |  |
| 4. | In pattern A below, there are 5 red beads for every   | 4 yellow      | beads.  |                        |  |  |  |  |
|    | Pattern A Pattern B   |               | Pattern C   |                        |  |  |  |  |
|    | Describe patterns B and C in the same way.  |               |   |                        |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   | • • • • • •   | •   |                        |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |               |   |                        |  |  |  |  |

**24** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1

5. Complete the table to show how many screws are produced by two machines in different periods of time.

| Number of hours               | 1     | 2 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
|-------------------------------|-------|---|---|---|---|
| Number of screws at machine A | 1 800 |   |   |   |   |
| Number of screws at machine B | 2 700 |   |   |   |   |

| (a) | How much faster is machine B than machine A? | <b>\</b> ? |  |  |  |      |      |      |      |  |
|-----|--|------------|--|--|--|------|------|------|------|--|
| ` ' |  |            |  |  |  | <br> | <br> | <br> | <br> |  |

| (b) | How many screws will machine B produce in the same time that it takes |
|-----|---|
|     | machine A to make 100 screws?   |

The patterns in question 4 can be described like this: In pattern A, the **ratio** of yellow beads to red beads is 4 to 5. This is written as 4: 5. In pattern B, the ratio between yellow beads and red beads is 3: 6. In pattern C the ratio is 2: 7.

In question 5, machine A produces 2 screws for every 3 screws that machine B produces. This can be described by saying that the ratio between the production speeds of machines A and B is 2: 3.

| 6. | Nathi, Paul and Tim worked in Mr Setati's garden. Nathi worked for 5 hours, Paul for |
|----|--|
|    | 4 hours and Tim for 3 hours. Mr Setati gave the boys R600 for their work. How should |
|    | they divide the R600 among the three of them?  |
|    |  |
|    | •••••  |

A **ratio** is a comparison of two (or more) quantities. The number of hours that Nathi, Paul and Tim worked are in the ratio 5:4:3. To be fair, the money

We use **ratios** to show how many times more, or less, one quantity is than another.

should also be shared in that ratio. That means that Nathi should receive 5 parts, Paul 4 parts and Tim 3 parts of the money. There were 12 parts, which means Nathi should receive  $\frac{5}{12}$  of the total amount, Paul should get  $\frac{4}{12}$  and Tim should get  $\frac{3}{12}$ .

7. Ntabi uses 3 packets of jelly to make a pudding for 8 people. How many packets of jelly does she need to make a pudding for 16 people? And for 12 people?

| 8. | Which rectangle is more l   | ike a squar  | e: a 3 × 5 r                            | ectangle o          | r a 6 × 8 re   | ectangle? l  | Explain.   |
|----|---|--|---|---------------------|--|--|--|
|    | To increase 40 in the ratio represents two parts and not the new number represents 1 will therefore be $20 \times 3 = 6$                                    | 2: 3 mean<br>nust be inc<br>ts 3 parts. l<br>part. The i | s that the<br>creased so<br>If 40 repre | 40<br>that<br>sents | Rememl<br>multiply<br>does no<br>multiply<br>greater<br>increase | per that if y<br>by 1, the r<br>t change. If<br>by a numb<br>than 1, the<br>s. If you mu | ou<br>number<br>you<br>per<br>number<br>ultiply by |
| 9. | (a) Increase 56 in the rati   | o 2:3.   |   |                     |  | er smaller tl<br>decreases.  | nan 1, the   |
|    | (b) Decrease 72 in the ration.  (a) Divide 840 in the ration.  (b) Divide 360 in the ration.  Some data about the performance of the control of the ration. | io 4: 3.  o 3: 4.  o 1: 2: 3.  ormance of                | different                               | athletes d          | uring a wa   | alking eve   | nt is  |
|    | given below. Investigate the Arrange the athletes from  |  |   |                     |  | who walk   | s slowest.   |
|    | <ul><li>(a) First make estimates to</li><li>(b) Then use your calcula</li></ul>   | o do the in  | vestigatio                              | n.                  |  |  |  |
|    | Athlete   | A  | В                                       | С                   | D  | Е  | F  |
|    | Distance walked in m  | 2 480  | 4 283                                   | 3 729               | 6 209  | 3 112  | 5 638  |
|    | Time taken in minutes   | 17   | 43                                      | 28                  | 53   | 24   | 45   |
|    |   |  |   |                     |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |   |                     |  |  |  |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 26 2014/07/03 10:53:18 AM

#### PROFIT, LOSS, DISCOUNT AND INTEREST

- 1. (a) How much is 1 eighth of R800?
  - (b) How much is 1 hundredth of R800?
  - (b) How much is 7 hundredths of R800?

Rashid is a furniture dealer. He buys a couch for R2 420. He displays the couch in his showroom with the price marked as R3 200. Rashid offers a discount of R320 to customers who pay cash.

The amount for which a dealer buys an article from a producer or manufacturer is called the **cost price**. The price marked on the article is called the **marked price** and the price of the article after discount is the selling price.

- 2. (a) What is the cost price of the couch in Rashid's furniture shop?
  - (b) What is the marked price?
  - (c) What is the selling price for a customer who pays cash?
  - (d) How much is 10 hundredths of R3 200?

The **discount** on an article is always less than the marked price of the article. In fact, it is only a fraction of the marked price. The discount of R320 that Rashid offers on the couch is 10 hundredths of the marked price.

Another word for hundredths is **percentage**, and the symbol for percentage is %. So we can say that Rashid offers a discount of 10%.

A percentage is a number of hundredths.

18% is 18 hundredths, and 25% is 25 hundredths.

% is a symbol for hundredths. 8% means 8 hundredths and 15% means 15 hundredths. The symbol % is just a variation of the  $\frac{100}{100}$  that is used in the common fraction notation for hundredths. 8% is  $\frac{0}{100}$ .

**CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS** 

A discount of 6% on an article can be calculated in two steps:

Step 1: Calculate 1 hundredth of the marked price (divide by 100).

Step 2: Calculate 6 hundredths of the marked price (multiply by 6).

3. Calculate a discount of 6% on each of the following marked prices of articles:

(a) R3 600

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 27

(b) R9 360

| 4. | (a)     | How much is 1 hundredth of R700?   |
|----|---------|--|
|    | (b)     | A customer pays cash for a coat marked at R700.  |
|    |         | He is given R63 discount. How many hundredths of R700 is this?   |
|    | (c)     | What is the percentage discount?   |
| 5. |         | ient buys a blouse marked at R300 and she is given R36 discount for paying cash. rk as in question 4 to determine what percentage discount she was given.                        |
|    | • • • • | •  |
|    | • • •   | •  |
| Yo | u ma    | ay use a calculator to do questions 6, 7 and 8.  |
| 6. |         | ealer buys an article for R7 500 and makes the price 30% higher. The article is sold $20\%$ discount.  |
|    | (a)     | What is the selling price of the article?  |
|    | • • •   |  |
|    | (b)     | What is the dealer's percentage profit?  |
|    | • • • • |  |
|    |         | a person borrows money from a bank or some other institution, he or she lly has to pay for the use of the money. This is called <b>interest</b> .                                |
| 7. |         | n borrows R7 000 from a bank at 14% interest for one year. How much does he re to pay back to the bank at the end of the period?   |
|    | • • • • |  |
| 8. | Jabı    | u invests R5 600 for one year at 8% interest.  |
|    | (a)     | What will the value of his investment be at the end of that year?  |
|    | (b)     | At the end of the year Jabu does not withdraw the investment or the interest earned, but reinvests it for another year. How much will it be worth at the end of the second year? |
|    | • • •   | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (c)     | What will the value of Jabu's investment be after five years?  |
|    |         |  |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 28 2014/07/03 10:53:19 AM

# CHAPTER 2 Integers

In this chapter you will work with whole numbers smaller than 0. These numbers are called negative numbers. The whole numbers larger than 0, 0 itself and the negative whole numbers together are called the **integers**. Mathematicians have agreed that negative numbers should have certain properties that would make them useful for various purposes. You will learn about these properties and how they make it possible to do calculations with negative numbers.

| 2.1 | What is beyond 0?                      | . 31 |
|-----|--|------|
| 2.2 | Adding and subtracting with integers   | . 35 |
| 2.3 | Multiplying and dividing with integers | . 40 |
| 2.4 | Squares, cubes and roots with integers | . 47 |

#### Do what you can.

| 5-0=?      | 5 – 7 =?  | 5 + 5 =?  |
|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 5 – 1 =?   | 5 - 6 = ? | 5 + 4 = ? |
| 5 – 2 =?   | 5 – 5 =?  | 5 + 3 =?  |
| 5 – 3 =?   | 5 – 4 =?  | 5 + 2 = ? |
| 5 – 4 =?   | 5 – 3 =?  | 5 + 1 =?  |
| 5 - 5 =?   | 5 – 2 =?  | 5 + 0 = ? |
| 5 - 6 = ?  | 5 – 1 =?  | 5 +? =?   |
| 5 – 7 =?   | 5 - 0 = ? | 5 +? =?   |
| 5 - 8 = ?  | 5 -? =?   | 5 +? =?   |
| 5 – 9 =?   | 5 -? =?   | 5 +? =?   |
| 5 - 10 = ? | 5 -? =?   | 5+?=?     |

#### Choose a good plan to complete this table.

**Plan A:** Look at where the number 4 appears in the table. All the 4s lie on a diagonal, going down from left to right. Complete the other diagonals in the same way.

**Plan B:** Look at the number 13 in the table. It is on the right, in the fourth row from the top. It can be obtained by adding the two numbers indicated by arrows. Complete all the cells by adding numbers from the yellow column and blue row in this way.

**Plan C:** In each row, add 1 to go right and subtract 1 to go left.

**Plan D:** In each column, add 1 to go up and subtract 1 to go down.

| 0  | 1         | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8              | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16   |
|----|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----------------|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|------|
|    |           |    |    |    | 4  |    |    | 7              |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |      |
|    |           |    |    |    |    | 4  |    | 6              |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |      |
| -3 | -2        | -1 | 0  |    |    |    | 4  | 5              |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | - 13 |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | 4              |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |      |
| -5 | -4        |    |    |    |    |    |    | 3              | 4 |    |    |    |    |    |    |      |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | 2              |   | 4  |    |    |    |    |    |      |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | 1              |   |    | 4  |    |    |    |    |      |
| -8 | <b>-7</b> | -6 | -5 | -4 | -3 | -2 | -1 | 0              | 1 | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8    |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | -1             |   |    |    |    | 4  |    |    |      |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |                |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |      |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | -2             |   |    |    |    |    | 4  |    |      |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | -2<br>-3       |   |    |    |    |    | 4  | 4  |      |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |                |   |    |    |    |    | 4  | 4  | 4    |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | -3             |   |    |    |    |    | 4  | 4  | 4    |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | -3<br>-4       |   |    |    |    |    | 4  | 4  | 4    |
|    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    | -3<br>-4<br>-5 |   |    |    |    |    | 4  | 0  | 4    |

# **2** Integers

## 2.1 What is beyond 0?

#### WHY PEOPLE DECIDED TO HAVE NEGATIVE NUMBERS

On the right, you can see how Jimmy prefers to work when doing calculations such as 542 + 253.

He tries to calculate 542 – 253 in a similar way:

$$500 - 200 = 300$$
  
 $40 - 50 = ?$ 

Jimmy clearly has a problem. He reasons as follows:

I can subtract 40 from 40; that gives 0. But then there is still 10 that I have to subtract.

He decides to deal with the 10 that he still has to subtract later, and continues:

$$500 - 200 = 300$$

40-50 = 0, but there is still 10 that I have to subtract.

2-3 = 0, but there is still 1 that I have to subtract.

1. (a) What must Jimmy still subtract, and what will his final answer be?

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

(b) When Jimmy did another subtraction problem, he ended up with this writing at one stage:

600 and (-)50 and (-)7

What do you think is Jimmy's final answer for this subtraction problem?

•••••

About 500 years ago, some mathematicians proposed that a "negative number" may be used to describe the result in a situation such as in Jimmy's subtraction problem above, where a number is subtracted from a number smaller than itself.

For example, we may say 10 - 20 = (-10)

This proposal was soon accepted by other mathematicians, and it is now used all over the world.

Mathematicians are people who do mathematics for a living. Mathematics is their profession, like health care is the profession of nurses and medical doctors.

500 + 200 = 700

700 + 90 + 5 = 795

40 + 50 = 902 + 3 = 5 2. Calculate each of the following:

(a) 16 – 20

(b) 16 - 30

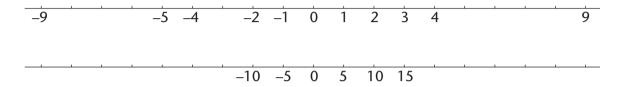
(c) 16-40

(d) 16 - 60

(e) 16 - 200

(f) 5 – 1 000

3. Some numbers are shown on the lines below. Fill in the missing numbers.



The following statement is true if the number is 5:

$$15 - (a certain number) = 10$$

A few centuries ago, some mathematicians decided they wanted to have numbers that will also make sentences like the following true:

$$15 + (a certain number) = 10$$

But to go from 15 to 10 you have to subtract 5.

The numbers 1; 2; 3; 4 etc. are called the **natural numbers**. The natural numbers, 0 and the negative whole numbers together are called the **integers**.

The number we need to make the sentence 15 + (a certain number) = 10 true must have the following strange property:

If you **add** this number, it should have the **same effect** as to **subtract 5**.

Now the mathematicians of a few centuries ago really wanted to have numbers for which such strange sentences would be true. So they thought:

Let us decide, and agree amongst ourselves, that the number we call negative 5 will have the property that if you add it to another number, the effect will be the same as when you subtract the natural number 5.

This means that the mathematicians agreed that 15 + (-5) is equal to 15 - 5. Stated differently, instead of adding *negative* 5 to a number, you may subtract 5.

Adding a negative number has the same effect as subtracting a natural number.

For example: 20 + (-15) = 20 - 15 = 5

4. Calculate each of the following:

(a) 500 + (-300)

- (b) 100 + (-20) + (-40)
- (c) 500 + (-200) + (-100) .....
- (d) 100 + (-60)
- • • • • •

5. Make a suggestion of what the answer for (-20) + (-40) should be. Give reasons for your suggestion.

••••••

6. Continue the lists of numbers below to complete the table.

| (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | (e) | (f) | (g) |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 10  | 100 | 3   | -3  | -20 | 150 | 0   |
| 9   | 90  | 6   | -6  | -18 | 125 | -5  |
| 8   | 80  | 9   | -9  | -16 | 100 | -10 |
| 7   | 70  | 12  | -12 | -14 | 75  | -15 |
| 6   | 60  | 15  | -15 |     | 50  | -20 |
| 5   | 50  |     |     |     |     | -25 |
| 4   | 40  |     |     |     |     |     |
| 3   | 30  |     |     |     |     |     |
| 2   | 20  |     |     |     |     |     |
| 1   | 10  |     |     |     |     |     |
| -1  | -10 |     |     |     |     |     |
|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

The following statement is true if the number is 5:

15 + (a certain number) = 20

What properties should a number have so that it makes the following statement true?

15 - (a certain number) = 20

To go from 15 to 20 you have to add 5. The number we need to make the sentence

*15* − (*a certain number*) = 20 true must have the following property:

If you **subtract** this number, it should have the **same effect** as to **add 5**.

Let us agree that 15 - (-5) is equal to 15 + 5.

Stated differently, instead of subtracting *negative 5* from a number, you may add 5.

**CHAPTER 2: INTEGERS** 

33

Subtracting a negative number has the same effect as adding a natural number.

For example: 20 - (-15) = 20 + 15 = 35

7. Calculate.

(a) 
$$30 - (-10)$$

(b) 
$$30 + 10$$

(c) 
$$30 + (-10)$$

(d) 
$$30 - 10$$

(f) 
$$30 + 30$$

(g) 
$$30 + (-30)$$

(g) 
$$30 + (-30)$$

(h) 
$$30 - 30$$

You probably agree that

$$5 + (-5) = 0$$

$$10 + (-10) = 0$$

. . . . . . . . . . .

$$20 + (-20) = 0$$

We may say that for each "positive" number there is a **corresponding** or **opposite** negative number. Two positive and negative numbers that correspond, for example 3 and (-3), are called **additive inverses**. They wipe each other out when you add them.

When you add any number to its additive inverse, the answer is 0 (the additive property of 0). For example, 120 + (-120) = 0.

What may each of the following be equal to?

$$(-8) + 5$$

(-5) + (-8)

8. Write the additive inverse of each of the following numbers:

(b) 
$$-24$$

The idea of additive inverses may be used to explain why 8 + (-5) is equal to 3:

$$8 + (-5) = 3 + 5 + (-5) = 3 + 0 = 3$$

9. Use the idea of additive inverses to explain why each of these statements is true:

(a) 
$$43 + (-30) = 13$$

(b) 
$$150 + (-80) = 70$$

#### STATEMENTS THAT ARE TRUE FOR MANY DIFFERENT NUMBERS

For how many different pairs of numbers can the following statement be true, if only natural (positive) numbers are allowed?

a number + another number = 10

For how many different pairs of numbers can the statement be true if negative numbers are also allowed?

# 2.2 Adding and subtracting with integers

#### ADDING CAN MAKE LESS AND SUBTRACTION CAN MAKE MORE

1. Calculate each of the following:

(a) 
$$10 + 4 + (-4)$$

(b) 
$$10 + (-4) + 4$$

(c) 
$$3 + 8 + (-8)$$

(d) 
$$3 + (-8) + 8$$

Natural numbers can be arranged in any order to add and subtract them. This is also the case for integers.

The numbers 1; 2; 3; 4; etc. that we use to count, are called **natural numbers**.

2. Calculate each of the following:

(a) 
$$18 + 12$$

(b) 
$$12 + 18$$

(c) 
$$2+4+6$$

(d) 
$$6+4+2$$

(e) 
$$2+6+4$$

(f) 
$$4+2+6$$

(g) 
$$4+6+2$$

(h) 
$$6+2+4$$

(i) 
$$6 + (-2) + 4$$
 .....

(j) 
$$4+6+(-2)$$
 .....

(k) 
$$4 + (-2) + 6$$
 .....

$$(m) 6 + 4 + (-2)$$

(n) 
$$(-2) + 6 + 4$$

(o) 
$$(-6) + 4 + 2$$

3. Calculate each of the following:

(a) 
$$(-5) + 10$$

(b) 
$$10 + (-5)$$

(c) 
$$(-8) + 20$$

(e) 
$$30 + (-10)$$

(f) 
$$30 + (-20)$$

(g) 
$$30 + (-30)$$

(h) 
$$10 + (-5) + (-3)$$

(i) 
$$(-5) + 7 + (-3) + 5$$

$$(j)$$
  $(-5) + 2 + (-7) + 4$ 

4. In each case, find the number that makes the statement true. Give your answer by writing a closed number sentence.

(a) 20 + (an unknown number) = 50

(b) 50 + (an unknown number) = 20

(c) 20 + (an unknown number) = 10

Statements like these are also called number sentences.

An incomplete number sentence, where some numbers are not known at first, is sometimes called an **open** 

#### number sentence:

known:

$$8 - (a number) = 10$$

A **closed number sentence** is where all the numbers are

$$8 + 2 = 10$$

(d) (an unknown number) + (-25) = 50

.....

(e) (an unknown number) + (-25) = -50

•••••••••••••••••••••••••

5. Use the idea of additive inverses to explain why each of the following statements is true:

(a) 43 + (-50) = -7

(b) 60 + (-85) = -25

6. Complete the table as far as you can.

| (a)        | (b)        | (c)        |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 5 – 8 =    | 5 + 8 =    | 8 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 7 =    | 5 + 7 =    | 7 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 6 =    | 5 + 6 =    | 6 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 5 =    | 5 + 5 =    | 5 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 4 =    | 5 + 4 =    | 4 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 3 =    | 5 + 3 =    | 3 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 2 =    | 5 + 2 =    | 2 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 1 =    | 5 + 1 =    | 1 – 3 =    |
| 5 – 0 =    | 5 + 0 =    | 0 – 3 =    |
| 5 – (–1) = | 5 + (-1) = | (-1) - 3 = |
| 5 - (-2) = | 5 + (-2) = | (-2) - 3 = |
| 5 - (-3) = | 5 + (-3) = | (-3) - 3 = |
| 5 - (-4) = | 5 + (-4) = | (-4) - 3 = |
| 5 - (-5) = | 5 + (-5) = | (-5) - 3 = |
| 5 - (-6) = | 5 + (-6) = | (-6) - 3 = |

7. Calculate.

(a) 
$$80 + (-60)$$

(b) 
$$500 + (-200) + (-200)$$

8. (a) Is 100 + (-20) + (-20) = 60, or does it equal something else?

(b) What do you think (-20) + (-20) is equal to?

9. Calculate.

(a) 
$$20-20$$

(b) 
$$50 - 20$$

(c) 
$$(-20) - (-20)$$

(d) 
$$(-50)$$
 –  $(-20)$ 

10. Calculate.

(a) 
$$20 - (-10)$$

(c) 
$$20 + (-10)$$

(d) 
$$100 + (-100)$$

(e) 
$$(-20) - (-10)$$

(f) 
$$(-100) - (-100)$$

(h) (-100) + (-100)

(g) (-20) + (-10)

| 11. Comp | lete the | table as | far as | you can. |
|----------|----------|----------|--------|----------|
|----------|----------|----------|--------|----------|

| (a)        | (b)             | (c)           |
|------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 5 - (-8) = | (-5) + 8 =      | 8 – (–3) =    |
| 5 – (–7) = | (-5) + 7 =      | 7 – (–3) =    |
| 5 - (-6) = | (-5) + 6 =      | 6 - (-3) =    |
| 5 - (-5) = | (-5) + 5 =      | 5 - (-3) =    |
| 5 - (-4) = | (-5) + 4 =      | 4 - (-3) =    |
| 5 - (-3) = | (-5) + 3 =      | 3 - (-3) =    |
| 5 - (-2) = | (-5) + 2 =      | 2 - (-3) =    |
| 5 - (-1) = | (-5) + 1 =      | 1 - (-3) =    |
| 5 – 0 =    | (-5) + 0 =      | 0 - (-3) =    |
| 5 – 1 =    | (-5) + (-1) =   | (-1) - (-3) = |
| 5 – 2 =    | (-5) + (-2) =   | (-2) - (-3) = |
| 5 – 3 =    | (-5) + (-3) =   | (-3) - (-3) = |
| 5 – 4 =    | (-5) + (-4) =   | (-4) - (-3) = |
| 5 – 5 =    | (-5) + (-5) = - | (-5) - (-3) = |

| 12 |       | each case, state whether the statement is true or false and give a numerical mple to demonstrate your answer.                        |
|----|-------|--|
|    | (a)   | Subtracting a positive number from a negative number has the same effect as adding the additive inverse of the positive number.      |
|    | • • • | •  |
|    | (b)   | Adding a negative number to a positive number has the same effect as adding the additive inverse of the negative number.             |
|    | (c)   | Subtracting a negative number from a positive number has the same effect as  |
|    |       | subtracting the additive inverse of the negative number.   |
|    | • • • |  |
|    | (d)   | Adding a negative number to a positive number has the same effect as subtracting the additive inverse of the negative number.        |
|    | • • • |  |
|    | (e)   | Adding a positive number to a negative number has the same effect as adding the additive inverse of the positive number.             |
|    | •••   | •  |
|    | (f)   | Adding a positive number to a negative number has the same effect as subtracting the additive inverse of the positive number.        |
|    | • • • |  |
|    | (g)   | Subtracting a positive number from a negative number has the same effect as subtracting the additive inverse of the positive number. |
|    | •••   |  |
|    | (h)   | Subtracting a negative number from a positive number has the same effect as adding the additive inverse of the negative number.      |
|    | • • • |  |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 38 2014/07/03 10:53:20 AM

MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1

#### **COMPARING INTEGERS AND SOLVING PROBLEMS**

| 1. | Fill <. > | or = into  | the block to  | make th | ne relationship | between  | the numbers     | true: |
|----|-----------|------------|---------------|---------|-----------------|----------|-----------------|-------|
|    | 1 111  /  | OI - IIIIO | tile block to | manc ti | ic iciutioiiii  | DCCNCCII | tile ilulilbelb | uc.   |

(d) 
$$10-7$$
  $-(10-7)$ 

(f) 
$$12-5$$
  $-(12+5)$ 

| 2. | At 5 a.m. in Bloemfontein the temperature was –5 °C. At 1 p.m., it was 19 °C. By how |
|----|--|
|    | many degrees did the temperature rise?   |

| 3. | A diver swims 150 m below the surface of the sea. She moves 75 m towards the |  |
|----|--|--|
|    | surface. How far below the surface is she now?                               |  |

| • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | • |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|

- 4. One trench in the ocean is 800 m deep and another is 2 200 m deep. What is the difference in their depths?
- 5. An island has a mountain which is 1 200 m high. The surrounding ocean has a depth of 860 m. What is the difference in height?

.....

6. On a winter's day in Upington the temperature rose by 19 °C. If the minimum temperature was -4 °C, what was the maximum temperature?

•••••

# 2.3 Multiplying and dividing with integers

#### **MULTIPLICATION WITH INTEGERS**

| 1 | $C_{2}$ | C11 | late |
|---|---------|-----|------|
|   | \ .a    |     | 1415 |

(b) 
$$-10 + -10 + -10 + -10 + -10$$

(c) 
$$-6+-6+-6+-6+-6+-6+-6$$

(d) 
$$-8 + -8 + -8 + -8 + -8 + -8$$

(e) 
$$-20 + -20 + -20 + -20 + -20 + -20$$

2. In each case, show whether you agree  $(\mathcal{I})$  or disagree  $(\mathcal{I})$  with the given statement.

(a) 
$$10 \times (-5) = 50$$
 (b)  $8 \times (-6) = (-8) \times 6$  ......

(c) 
$$(-5) \times 10 = 5 \times (-10)$$
 (d)  $6 \times (-8) = -48$  (e)  $(-5) \times 10 = 10 \times (-5)$  (f)  $8 \times (-6) = 48$ 

(g) 
$$4 \times 12 = -48$$
 (h)  $(-4) \times 12 = -48$ 

Multiplication of integers is commutative:

$$(-20) \times 5 = 5 \times (-20)$$

3. Is addition of integers commutative?

Demonstrate your answer with three different examples.

.....

#### 4. Calculate.

(a) 
$$20 \times (-10)$$
 (b)  $(-5) \times 4$ 

(c) 
$$(-20) \times 10$$
 (d)  $4 \times (-25)$ 

(e) 
$$29 \times (-20)$$
 (f)  $(-29) \times (-2)$ 

#### 5. Calculate.

(a) 
$$10 \times 50 + 10 \times (-30)$$
 (b)  $50 + (-30)$ 

(c) 
$$10 \times (50 + (-30))$$
 (d)  $(-50) + (-30)$ 

(e) 
$$10 \times (-50) + 10 \times (-30)$$
 (f)  $10 \times ((-50) + (-30))$ 

The product of two positive numbers is a positive number, for example  $5 \times 6 = 30$ .

The product of a positive number and a negative number is a negative number, for example  $5 \times (-6) = -30$ .

The product of a negative number and a positive number is a negative number, for example  $(-5) \times 6 = -30$ .

6. (a) Four numerical expressions are given below. Underline the expressions that you would expect to have the same answers. Do not do the calculations.

 $14 \times (23 + 58)$ 

 $23 \times (14 + 58)$ 

 $14 \times 23 + 14 \times 58$ 

 $14 \times 23 + 58$ 

(b) What property of operations is demonstrated by the fact that two of the above expressions have the same value?

7. Consider your answers for question 6.

(a) Does multiplication distribute over addition in the case of integers?

(b) Illustrate your answer with two examples.

8. Three numerical expressions are given below. Underline the expressions that you

would expect to have the same answers. Do not do the calculations.

$$10 \times ((-50) - (-30))$$

$$10 \times (-50) - (-30)$$

$$10 \times (-50) - (-30)$$
  $10 \times (-50) - 10 \times (-30)$ 

9. Do the three sets of calculations given in question 8.

Your work in questions 5, 8 and 9 demonstrates that multiplication with a positive number distributes over addition and subtraction of integers. For example:

$$10 \times (5 + (-3)) = 10 \times 2 = 20$$
 and  $10 \times 5 + 10 \times (-3) = 50 + (-30) = 20$ 

$$10 \times (5 - (-3)) = 10 \times 8 = 80$$
 and  $10 \times 5 - 10 \times (-3) = 50 - (-30) = 80$ 

10. Calculate: (-10) × **(**5 + (-3)**)** 

Now consider the question of whether multiplication with a negative number distributes over addition and subtraction of integers. For example, would  $(-10) \times 5 + (-10) \times (-3)$  also have the answer -20, as does  $(-10) \times (5 + (-3))$ ?

11. What must  $(-10) \times (-3)$  be equal to, if we want  $(-10) \times 5 + (-10) \times (-3)$  to be equal to -20?

In order to ensure that multiplication distributes over addition and subtraction in the system of integers, we have to agree that

(a negative number) × (a negative number) is a positive number, for example  $(-10) \times (-3) = 30$ .

12. Calculate.

(a) 
$$(-10) \times (-5)$$

(b) 
$$(-10) \times 5$$

(c) 
$$10 \times 5$$

(d) 
$$10 \times (-5)$$

(e) 
$$(-20) \times (-10) + (-20) \times (-6)$$

(f) 
$$(-20) \times ((-10) + (-6))$$

(g) 
$$(-20) \times (-10) - (-20) \times (-6)$$

calculations with integers:

(h) 
$$(-20) \times ((-10) - (-6))$$

Here is a **summary of the properties of integers** that make it possible to do

• When a number is added to its additive inverse, the result is 0, for example (+12) + (-12) = 0.

. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

- Adding an integer has the same effect as subtracting its additive inverse. For example, 3 + (-10) can be calculated by doing 3 10, and the answer is -7.
- Subtracting an integer has the same effect as adding its additive inverse. For example, 3 (-10) can be calculated by doing 3 + 10, and the answer is 13.
- The product of a positive and a negative integer is negative, for example  $(-15) \times 6 = -90$ .
- The product of a negative and a negative integer is positive, for example  $(-15) \times (-6) = 90$ .

#### **DIVISION WITH INTEGERS**

1. (a) Calculate 25 × 8.

(b) How much is 200 ÷ 25? (c) How much is 200 ÷ 8?

Division is the inverse of multiplication. Hence, if two numbers and the value of their product are known, the answers to two division problems are also known.

2. Calculate.

(a) 
$$25 \times (-8)$$

(b) 
$$(-125) \times 8$$

.....

3. Use the work you have done for question 2 to write the answers for the following division questions:

(c) 
$$(-200) \div 25$$

(d) 
$$(-200) \div 8$$

4. Can you also work out the answers for the following division questions by using the work you have done for question 2?

(a) 
$$1000 \div (-125)$$

(b) 
$$(-1\ 000) \div (-8)$$
 .....

(c) 
$$(-100) \div (-25)$$

(d) 
$$100 \div (-25)$$
 .....

When two numbers are multiplied, for example  $30 \times 4 = 120$ , the word "product" can be used in various ways to describe the situation:

- An expression that specifies multiplication only, such as  $30 \times 4$ , is called a **product** or a product expression.
- The answer obtained is also called the product of the two numbers. For example, 120 is called the **product of 30 and 4**.

An expression that specifies division only, such as  $30 \div 5$ , is called a **quotient** or a **quotient expression**. The answer obtained is also called the quotient of the two numbers. For example, 6 is called the **quotient of 30 and 5**.

5. In each case, state whether you agree or disagree with the statement, and give an example to illustrate your answer.

(a) The quotient of a positive and a negative integer is negative.

••••••

|  | (b) The quotient of a positive and a positive  | tive integer is negative.   |
|--|--|---|
|  | (c) The quotient of a negative and a negative  | ative integer is negative.  |
|  | (d) The quotient of a negative and a negative  | ative integer is positive.  |
|  | •••••  | ••••••  |
| 6.                                     | Do the necessary calculations to enable y<br>(a) $(-500) \div (-20)$   | ou to provide the values of the quotients.<br>(b) $(-144) \div 6$   |
|  | (c) 1 440 ÷ (-60)  | (d) (-1 440) ÷ (-6)   |
|  | (e) -14 400 ÷ 600  | (f) 500 ÷ (-20)   |
|  | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  | •••••••••••   |
|  |  |   |
| T                                      | HE ASSOCIATIVE PROPERTIES OF OI  | PERATIONS WITH INTEGERS   |
| M<br>se                                | ultiplication of whole numbers is <b>associa</b><br>veral factors, the factors can be placed in a  | <b>tive</b> . This means that in a product with   |
| M<br>se<br>pe<br>pr                    | ultiplication of whole numbers is <b>associa</b><br>veral factors, the factors can be placed in a<br>erformed in any sequence. For example, the  | <b>tive</b> . This means that in a product with ny sequence, and the calculations can be e following sequences of calculations will all the new answer multiplied by 10   |
| Miser<br>pe<br>pr<br>A.<br>B.          | ultiplication of whole numbers is <b>associa</b> veral factors, the factors can be placed in a erformed in any sequence. For example, the oduce the same answer: $2 \times 3$ , the answer of $2 \times 3$ multiplied by 5,  | tive. This means that in a product with ny sequence, and the calculations can be e following sequences of calculations will all the new answer multiplied by 100, the new answer multiplied by 33, the new answer multiplied by 2   |
| M<br>ser<br>pe<br>pr<br>A.<br>B.<br>C. | ultiplication of whole numbers is <b>associa</b> veral factors, the factors can be placed in a erformed in any sequence. For example, the oduce the same answer: $2 \times 3$ , the answer of $2 \times 3$ multiplied by 5, $2 \times 5$ , the answer of $2 \times 5$ multiplied by 10 $10 \times 5$ , the answer of $10 \times 5$ multiplied by 2, $3 \times 5$ , the answer of $3 \times 5$ multiplied by 2,               | tive. This means that in a product with ny sequence, and the calculations can be e following sequences of calculations will all the new answer multiplied by 100, the new answer multiplied by 33, the new answer multiplied by 2   |
| M<br>ser<br>pe<br>pr<br>A.<br>B.<br>C. | ultiplication of whole numbers is <b>associa</b> veral factors, the factors can be placed in a erformed in any sequence. For example, the oduce the same answer:  2 × 3, the answer of 2 × 3 multiplied by 5, 2 × 5, the answer of 2 × 5 multiplied by 10, 10 × 5, the answer of 10 × 5 multiplied by 3 × 5, the answer of 3 × 5 multiplied by 2, Do the four sets of calculations given in A the same answers.  A.          | tive. This means that in a product with my sequence, and the calculations can be e following sequences of calculations will all the new answer multiplied by 100, the new answer multiplied by 33, the new answer multiplied by 2 the new answer multiplied by 10 to Check whether they really produce  |
| M<br>ser<br>pe<br>pr<br>A.<br>B.<br>C. | ultiplication of whole numbers is <b>associa</b> veral factors, the factors can be placed in a erformed in any sequence. For example, the oduce the same answer:  2 × 3, the answer of 2 × 3 multiplied by 5, 2 × 5, the answer of 2 × 5 multiplied by 10, 10 × 5, the answer of 10 × 5 multiplied by 3 × 5, the answer of 3 × 5 multiplied by 2,  Do the four sets of calculations given in A the same answers.  A.  B.     | tive. This means that in a product with my sequence, and the calculations can be e following sequences of calculations will all the new answer multiplied by 100, the new answer multiplied by 33, the new answer multiplied by 2 the new answer multiplied by 100 to check whether they really produce |
| M<br>ser<br>pe<br>pr<br>A.<br>B.<br>C. | ultiplication of whole numbers is <b>associa</b> veral factors, the factors can be placed in a erformed in any sequence. For example, the oduce the same answer:  2 × 3, the answer of 2 × 3 multiplied by 5, 2 × 5, the answer of 2 × 5 multiplied by 10, 10 × 5, the answer of 10 × 5 multiplied by 3 × 5, the answer of 3 × 5 multiplied by 2,  Do the four sets of calculations given in A the same answers.  A.  B.  C. | tive. This means that in a product with my sequence, and the calculations can be e following sequences of calculations will all the new answer multiplied by 100, the new answer multiplied by 33, the new answer multiplied by 2 the new answer multiplied by 10 to Check whether they really produce  |

**44** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1

| 2. | (a)   | If the numbers 3 and 10 in the calculuth with -3 and -10, do you think the fo  | lation sequences A, B, C and D are replaced our answers will still be the same? |
|----|---|--|---|
|    | (b)   | Investigate, to check your expectation   | on.   |
|    | • • • •   |  |   |
|    | • • • •   | •  | •   |
|    | • • • •   | •  |   |
|    | • • • •   | •  | •   |
|    | Mu  | ltiplication with integers is associativ   | e.  |
| •  | $2 \times 3$<br>with<br>$5 \times 6$<br>Who               | h brackets ensures that this represental $(2 \times 3) \times 10$ , where brackets are used to en brackets are used, there are different         | om left to right unless otherwise indicated                                     |
|    | • • • •   | •••••••••••  |   |
| 4. | Inv   |  | for multiplication in question 2, whether sequences of four integers.           |
|    | • • • •   | •  |   |
|    | • • • •   |  |   |
| 5. | <ul><li>(a)</li><li>(b)</li><li>(c)</li><li>(d)</li></ul> | Calculate: $80 - 30 + 40 - 20$<br>Calculate: $80 + (-30) + 40 + (-20)$<br>Calculate: $30 - 80 + 20 - 40$<br>Calculate: $(-30) + 80 + (-20) + 40$ |   |
|    | (e)   | Calculate: 20 + 30 - 40 - 80   |   |

2014/07/03 10:53:20 AM

#### **MIXED CALCULATIONS WITH INTEGERS**

| 1.       | Calculate. |
|----------|------------|
| <b>.</b> | Carcarace  |

(a) 
$$-3 \times 4 + (-7) \times 9$$

(b) 
$$-20(-4-7)$$

••••••••••

••••••••••••

(c) 
$$20 \times (-5) - 30 \times 7$$

(d) 
$$-9(20-15)$$

•••••

•••••

(e) 
$$-8 \times (-6) - 8 \times 3$$

(f) 
$$(-26-13) \div (-3)$$

•••••••••••

•••••

(g) 
$$-15 \times (-2) + (-15) \div (-3)$$

(h) 
$$-15(2-3)$$

(i) 
$$(-5 + -3) \times 7$$

(j) 
$$-5 \times (-3 + 7) + 20 \div (-4)$$

•••••

••••••••••••••

#### 2. Calculate.

(a) 
$$20 \times (-15+6) - 5 \times (-2-8) - 3 \times (-3-8)$$

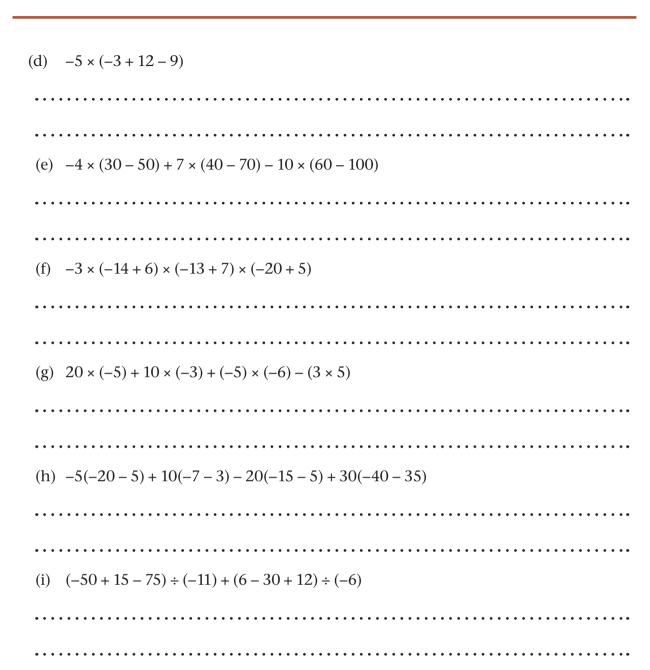
••••••

(b) 
$$40 \times (7 + 12 - 9) + 25 \div (-5) - 5 \div 5$$

••••••

(c) 
$$-50(20-25) + 30(-10+7) - 20(-16+12)$$

•••••



# 2.4 Squares, cubes and roots with integers

#### **SQUARES AND CUBES OF INTEGERS**

1. Calculate.

2. Write the answers for each of the following:

3. Complete the table.

| х                           | 1 | -1 | 2 | -2 | 5 | -5 | 10 | -10 |
|-----------------------------|---|----|---|----|---|----|----|-----|
| $x^2$ which is $x \times x$ |   |    |   |    |   |    |    |     |
| $\chi^3$                    |   |    |   |    |   |    |    |     |

4. In each case, state for which values of *x*, in the table in question 3, the given statement is true.

| (a) | $x^3$ is a negative number | • |
|-----|----------------------------|---|
|-----|----------------------------|---|

(b)  $x^2$  is a negative number \_\_\_\_\_\_

(c) 
$$x^2 > x^3$$

(d) 
$$x^2 < x^3$$

5. Complete the table.

| Х        | 3 | -3 | 4 | -4 | 6 | -6 | 7 | -7 |
|----------|---|----|---|----|---|----|---|----|
| $\chi^2$ |   |    |   |    |   |    |   |    |
| $\chi^3$ |   |    |   |    |   |    |   |    |

6. Ben thinks of a number. He adds 5 to it, and his answer is 12.

(a) What number did he think of?

(b) Is there another number that would also give 12 when 5 is added to it?

7. Lebo also thinks of a number. She multiplies the number by itself and gets 25.

(a) What number did she think of?

(b) Is there more than one number that will give 25 when multiplied by itself?

8. Mary thinks of a number and calculates (the number)  $\times$  (the number)  $\times$  (the number). Her answer is 27.

What number did Mary think of? . . . . .

 $10^2$  is 100 and  $(-10)^2$  is also 100.

Both 10 and (-10) are called **square roots** of 100. 10 may be called the **positive square root** of 100, and (-10) may be called the **negative square root** of 100.

9. Write the positive square root and the negative square root of each number.

(a) 64

(b) 9

10. Complete the table.

| Number               | 1 | 4 | 9  | 16 | 25 | 36 | 49 | 64 |
|----------------------|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Positive square root |   |   | 3  |    |    |    |    | 8  |
| Negative square root |   |   | -3 |    |    |    |    | -8 |

11. Complete the tables.

| (a) | х        | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |  |
|-----|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
|     | $\chi^3$ |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |

 $3^3$  is 27 and  $(-5)^3$  is -125.

3 is called the **cube root** of 27, because  $3^3 = 27$ .

-5 is called the cube root of -125 because  $(-5)^3 = -125$ .

#### 12. Complete the table.

| Number    | -1 | 8 | -27 | -64 | -125 | -216 | 1 000 |
|-----------|----|---|-----|-----|------|------|-------|
| Cube root |    |   | -3  |     |      |      | 10    |

The symbol  $\sqrt{\ }$  is used to indicate "root".

 $\sqrt[3]{-125}$  represents the cube root of -125. That means  $\sqrt[3]{-125} = -5$ .

 $\sqrt[2]{36}$  represents the positive square root of 36, and  $-\sqrt[2]{36}$  represents the negative square root. The "2" that indicates "square" is normally omitted, so  $\sqrt{36} = 6$  and  $-\sqrt{36} = -6$ .

### $13. \, Complete \, the \, table.$

| 3√-8 | $\sqrt{121}$ | ∛–64 | $-\sqrt{64}$ | $\sqrt{64}$ | 3√−1 | $-\sqrt{1}$ | ∛–216 |
|------|--------------|------|--------------|-------------|------|-------------|-------|
|      |              |      |              |             |      |             |       |

#### **WORKSHEET**

1. Use the numbers -8, -5 and -3 to demonstrate each of the following:

(a) Multiplication with integers distributes over addition.

(b) Multiplication with integers distributes over subtraction.

(c) Multiplication with integers is associative.

(d) Addition with integers is associative.

2. Calculate each of the following without using a calculator:

(a) 
$$5 \times (-2)^3$$

(b) 
$$3 \times (-5)^2$$

(c) 
$$2 \times (-5)^3$$

(d) 
$$10 \times (-3)^2$$

••••••••••••••••••••••••

3. Use a calculator to calculate each of the following:

(a) 
$$24 \times (-53) + (-27) \times (-34) - (-55) \times 76$$

(b) 
$$64 \times (27 - 85) - 29 \times (-47 + 12)$$

4. Use a calculator to calculate each of the following:

(a) 
$$-24 \times 53 + 27 \times 34 + 55 \times 76$$

(b) 
$$64 \times (-58) + 29 \times (47 - 12)$$

If you don't get the same answers in questions 3 and 4, you have made mistakes.

**INTEGERS** 

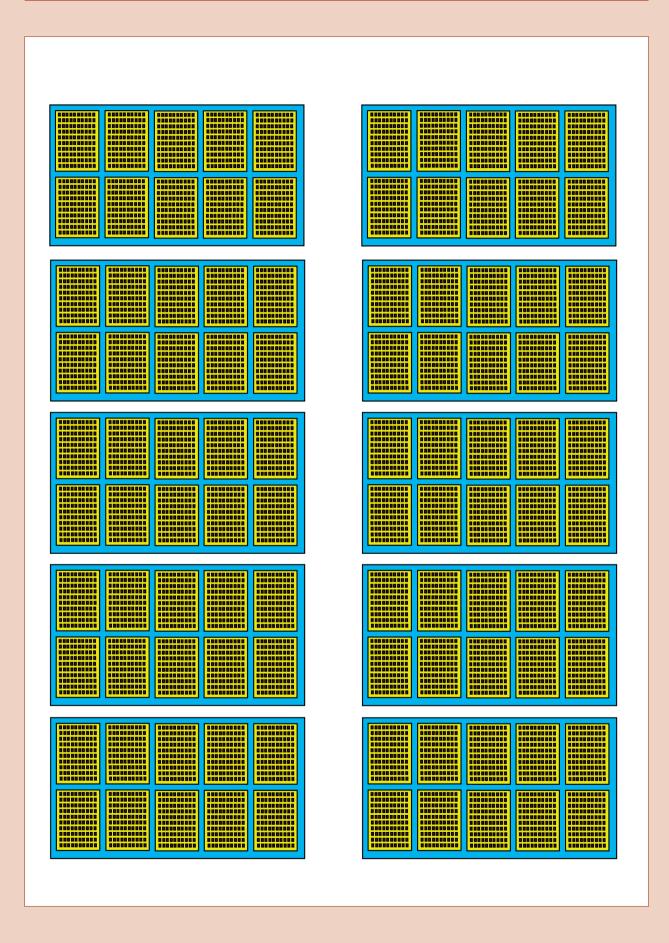
# CHAPTER 3 Exponents

In this chapter, you will revise work you have done on squares, cubes, square roots and cube roots. You will learn about laws of exponents that will enable you to do calculations using numbers written in exponential form.

Very large numbers are written in scientific notation. Scientific notation is a convenient way of writing very large numbers as a product of a number between 1 and 10 and a power of 10.

| 3.1 | Revision                                     | 53 |
|-----|--|----|
| 3.2 | Working with integers                        | 58 |
| 3.3 | Laws of exponents                            | 60 |
| 3.4 | Calculations                                 | 70 |
| 3.5 | Squares, cubes and roots of rational numbers | 71 |
| 3.6 | Scientific notation                          | 74 |

2014/07/03 10:53:22 AM



Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 52 2014/07/03 10:53:23 AM

# **3** Exponents

#### 3.1 Revision

#### **EXPONENTIAL NOTATION**

1. Calculate.

(a) 
$$2 \times 2 \times 2$$

(b) 
$$2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$$

(c) 
$$3 \times 3 \times 3$$

(d) 
$$3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$$

Instead of writing  $3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$  we can write  $3^6$ .

We read this as "3 to the power of 6". The number 3 is

the **base**, and 6 is the **exponent**.

When we write  $3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$  as  $3^6$ , we are using

exponential notation.

2. Write each of the following in exponential form:

(a) 
$$2 \times 2 \times 2$$

(b) 
$$2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$$

(c) 
$$3 \times 3 \times 3$$

(d) 
$$3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$$

3. Calculate.

(a) 
$$5^2$$

(b) 
$$2^5$$

(c)  $10^2$ 

(d) 
$$15^2$$

(e)  $3^4$ 

(g)  $2^3$ 

#### **SQUARES**

To square a number is to multiply it by itself. The square of 8 is 64 because  $8 \times 8$  equals 64.

We write  $8 \times 8$  as  $8^2$  in exponential form.

We read  $8^2$  as **eight squared**.

1. Complete the table.

|     | Number | Square the number | Exponential form | Square |
|-----|--------|-------------------|------------------|--------|
| (a) | 1      |                   |                  |        |
| (b) | 2      |                   |                  |        |
| (c) | 3      |                   |                  |        |
| (d) | 4      |                   |                  |        |
| (e) | 5      |                   |                  |        |
| (f) | 6      |                   |                  |        |
| (g) | 7      |                   |                  |        |
| (h) | 8      | 8 × 8             | 82               | 64     |
| (i) | 9      |                   |                  |        |
| (j) | 10     |                   |                  |        |
| (k) | 11     |                   |                  |        |
| (1) | 12     |                   |                  |        |

2. Calculate the following:

(a) 
$$3^2 \times 4^2$$

(b) 
$$2^2 \times 3^2$$

(c)  $2^2 \times 5^2$ 

(d) 
$$2^2 \times 4^2$$

.....

 $3. \ \ Complete the following statements to make them true:$ 

(a) 
$$3^2 \times 4^2 = \frac{}{2}$$

(b) 
$$2^2 \times 3^2 = \frac{2}{12}$$

(c) 
$$2^2 \times 5^2 = \frac{2}{100}$$

(d) 
$$2^2 \times 4^2 = \frac{2}{12}$$

#### **CUBES**

To cube a number is to multiply it by itself and then by itself again. The cube of 3 is 27 because  $3 \times 3 \times 3$  equals 27.

We write  $3 \times 3 \times 3$  as  $3^3$  in exponential form.

We read  $3^3$  as **three cubed**.

1. Complete the table.

|     | Number | Cube the number       | Exponential form | Cube |
|-----|--------|-----------------------|------------------|------|
| (a) | 1      |                       |                  |      |
| (b) | 2      |                       |                  |      |
| (c) | 3      | $3 \times 3 \times 3$ | 33               | 27   |
| (d) | 4      |                       |                  |      |
| (e) | 5      |                       |                  |      |
| (f) | 6      |                       |                  |      |
| (g) | 7      |                       |                  |      |
| (h) | 8      |                       |                  |      |
| (i) | 9      |                       |                  |      |
| (j) | 10     |                       |                  |      |

| 2  | Calculate | the | fo11 | owin  | σ. |
|----|-----------|-----|------|-------|----|
| ∠. | Calculate | uie | 1011 | OWIII | g. |

(a) 
$$2^3 \times 3^3$$

(b) 
$$2^3 \times 5^3$$

(c) 
$$2^3 \times 4^3$$

(d) 
$$1^3 \times 9^3$$

.....

3. Which of the following statements are true? If a statement is false, rewrite it as a true statement.

(a) 
$$2^3 \times 3^3 = 6^3$$

(b) 
$$2^3 \times 5^3 = 7^3$$

(c)  $2^3 \times 4^3 = 8^3$ 

(d) 
$$1^3 \times 9^3 = 10^3$$

••••••••••

#### **SQUARE AND CUBE ROOTS**

To find the square root of a number we ask the question: Which number was multiplied by itself to get a square?

The square root of 16 is 4 because  $4 \times 4 = 16$ .

The question: **Which number was multiplied by itself to get 16?** is written mathematically as  $\sqrt{16}$ .

The answer to this question is written as  $\sqrt{16} = 4$ .

1. Complete the table.

|     | Number | Square of the number | Square root of the square of the number | Reason     |
|-----|--------|----------------------|---|------------|
| (a) | 1      |                      |   |            |
| (b) | 2      |                      |   |            |
| (c) | 3      |                      |   |            |
| (d) | 4      | 16                   | 4                                       | 4 × 4 = 16 |
| (e) | 5      |                      |   |            |
| (f) | 6      |                      |   |            |
| (g) | 7      |                      |   |            |
| (h) | 8      |                      |   |            |
| (i) | 9      |                      |   |            |
| (j) | 10     |                      |   |            |
| (k) | 11     |                      |   |            |
| (l) | 12     |                      |   |            |

| 2          | Coloulate the follows | ng. Justify your answer.   |
|------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Z</i> . | Calculate the followi | iig. justiiv voul aliswel. |
|            |                       | () ()                      |

| (a) √144        | (b) √100        |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| •••••           | •••••           |
| (c) $\sqrt{81}$ | (d) $\sqrt{64}$ |

To find the cube root of a number we ask the question: Which number was multiplied by itself and again by itself to get a cube?

The cube root of 64 is 4 because  $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$ .

The question: Which number was multiplied by itself and again by itself (or cubed) to get 64? is written mathematically as  $\sqrt[3]{64}$ . The answer to this question is written as  $\sqrt[3]{64} = 4$ .

#### 3. Complete the table.

|     | Number | Cube of the number | Cube root of the cube of the number | Reason                     |
|-----|--------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) | 1      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (b) | 2      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (c) | 3      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (d) | 4      | 64                 | 4                                   | $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$ |
| (e) | 5      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (f) | 6      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (g) | 7      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (h) | 8      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (i) | 9      |                    |                                     |                            |
| (j) | 10     |                    |                                     |                            |

| 4. | Calculate the following and give reasons | for your answers:                       |
|----|--|---|
|    | (a) $\sqrt[3]{216}$                      | (b) <sup>3</sup> √8                     |
|    |  | • |
|    | (c) $\sqrt[3]{125}$                      | (d) $\sqrt[3]{27}$                      |
|    | (c) V123                                 | (u) \\27                                |
|    | •••••                                    | •••••                                   |
|    | (e) $\sqrt[3]{64}$                       | (f) $\sqrt[3]{1000}$                    |
|    |  |   |

# 3.2 Working with integers

#### REPRESENTING INTEGERS IN EXPONENTIAL FORM

1. Calculate the following, without using a calculator:

(a) 
$$-2 \times -2 \times -2$$

(b) 
$$-2 \times -2 \times -2 \times -2$$

(c) 
$$-5 \times -5$$

(d) 
$$-5 \times -5 \times -5$$

(e) 
$$-1 \times -1 \times -1 \times -1$$

(f) 
$$-1 \times -1 \times -1$$

•••••

2. Calculate the following:

(a) 
$$-2^2$$

(b) 
$$(-2)^2$$

(c)  $(-5)^3$ 

(d) 
$$-5^3$$

•••••••••••••••••

3. Use your calculator to calculate the answers to question 2.

(a) Are your answers to question 2(a) and (b) different or the same as those of the calculator?

••••••

(b) If your answers are different to those of the calculator, try to explain how the calculator did the calculations differently from you.

.....

•••••

The calculator "understands"  $-5^2$  and  $(-5)^2$  as two different numbers.

It understands  $-5^2$  as  $-5 \times 5 = -25$  and

$$(-5)^2$$
 as  $-5 \times -5 = 25$ 

4. Write the following in exponential form:

(a) 
$$-2 \times -2 \times -2$$

(b) 
$$-2 \times -2 \times -2 \times -2$$

(c) 
$$-5 \times -5$$

(d) 
$$-5 \times -5 \times -5$$

(e)  $-1 \times -1 \times -1 \times -1$ 

(f) 
$$-1 \times -1 \times -1$$

5. Calculate the following:

(a) 
$$(-3)^2$$

(b) 
$$(-3)^3$$

(c) 
$$(-2)^4$$

(d) 
$$(-2)^6$$

(e) 
$$(-2)^5$$

(f) 
$$(-3)^4$$



6. Say whether the sign of the answer is negative or positive. Explain why.

(a) 
$$(-3)^6$$

(b) 
$$(-5)^{11}$$

(c)  $(-4)^{20}$ 

(d)  $(-7)^5$ 

7. Say whether the following statements are true or false. If a statement is false rewrite it as a correct statement.

(a) 
$$(-3)^2 = -9$$

(b) 
$$-3^2 = 9$$

(c) 
$$(-5^2) = -5^2$$

(d) 
$$(-1)^3 = -1^3$$

(e)  $(-6)^3 = -18$ 

(f) 
$$(-2)^6 = 2^6$$

## 3.3 Laws of exponents

#### **PRODUCT OF POWERS**

1. A product of 2s is given below. Describe it using exponential notation, that is, write it as a power of 2.

•••••

2. Express each of the following as a product of the powers of 2, as indicated by the brackets.

(a)  $(2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2)$ 

.....

(b)  $(2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2)$ 

(c)  $(2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2)$ 

(d)  $(2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2)$ 

(e)  $(2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2)$ 

3. Complete the following statements so that they are true. You may want to refer to your answers to question 2 (a) to (e) to help you.

(a)  $2^3 \times \dots = 2^{12}$ 

(b)  $2^5 \times \times 2^2 = 2^{12}$ 

(c)  $2^2 \times 2^2 \times 2^2 \times 2^2 \times 2^2 \times 2^2 =$ 

- (d)  $2^8 \times \dots = 2^{12}$
- (e)  $2^3 \times 2^3 \times 2^3 \times \dots = 2^{12}$
- (f)  $2^6 \times ... = 2^{12}$
- (g)  $2^2 \times 2^{10} = \dots$

Suppose we are asked to simplify:  $3^2 \times 3^4$ .

The solution is: 
$$3^2 \times 3^4 = 9 \times 81$$

$$=3^{6}$$

The base (3) is a repeated factor. The exponents (2 and 4) tell us the number of times each factor is repeated.

We can explain this solution in the following manner:

$$3^2 \times 3^4 = \underbrace{3 \times 3}_{} \times \underbrace{3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3}_{} = \underbrace{3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3}_{} = 3^6$$

2 factors 4 factors

6 factors

#### 4. Complete the table.

|     | Product of powers    | Repeated<br>factor | Total number of times the factor is repeated | Simplified form |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------|--|-----------------|
| (a) | $2^7 \times 2^3$     |                    |  |                 |
| (b) | $5^2 \times 5^4$     |                    |  |                 |
| (c) | $4^1 \times 4^5$     |                    |  |                 |
| (d) | $6^3 \times 6^2$     |                    |  |                 |
| (e) | $2^{8} \times 2^{2}$ |                    |  |                 |
| (f) | $5^3 \times 5^3$     |                    |  |                 |
| (g) | $4^2 \times 4^4$     |                    |  |                 |
| (h) | $2^{1} \times 2^{9}$ |                    |  |                 |

When you multiply two or more powers that have the same base, the answer has the same base, but its exponent is equal to the sum of the exponents of the numbers you are multiplying.

We can express this symbolically as  $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$ , where m and n are natural numbers and a is not zero.

5. What is wrong with these statements? Correct each one.

(a) 
$$2^3 \times 2^4 = 2^{12}$$

(b) 
$$10 \times 10^2 \times 10^3 = 10^{1 \times 2 \times 3} = 10^6$$

(c)  $3^2 \times 3^3 = 3^6$  (d)  $5^3 \times 5^2 = 15 \times 10$ 

6. Express each of the following numbers as a single power of 10.

**Example:**  $1\,000\,000$  as a power of 10 is  $10^6$ .

(a) 100

(b) 1000

(c) 10 000

(d)  $10^2 \times 10^3 \times 10^4$ 

(e)  $100 \times 1000 \times 10000$ 

(f) 1 000 000 000

7. Write each of the following products in exponential form:

(b) 
$$(x \times x) \times (x \times x \times x) \times (x \times x \times x \times x)$$

••••••

(c) 
$$(x \times x \times x \times x) \times (x \times x) \times (x \times x) \times x$$

.....

(d) 
$$(x \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x) \times (x \times x \times x)$$

•••••

(e) 
$$(x \times x \times x) \times (y \times y \times y)$$

•••••

(f) 
$$(a \times a) \times (b \times b)$$

•••••

8. Complete the table.

|     | Product of powers      | Repeated factor | Total number of times the factor is repeated | Simplified form |
|-----|------------------------|-----------------|--|-----------------|
| (a) | $\chi^7 \times \chi^3$ |                 |  |                 |
| (b) | $\chi^2 \times \chi^4$ |                 |  |                 |
| (c) | $\chi^1 \times \chi^5$ |                 |  |                 |
| (d) | $\chi^3 \times \chi^2$ |                 |  |                 |
| (e) | $\chi^8 \times \chi^2$ |                 |  |                 |
| (f) | $\chi^3 \times \chi^3$ |                 |  |                 |
| (g) | $\chi^1 \times \chi^9$ |                 |  |                 |

#### **RAISING A POWER TO A POWER**

1. Complete the table of powers of 2.

| х     | 1       | 2     | 3  | 4  | 5 | 6  | 7 | 8  | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|-------|---------|-------|----|----|---|----|---|----|---|----|----|
| $2^x$ | 2       | 4     |    |    |   |    |   |    |   |    |    |
|       | $2^{1}$ | $2^2$ | 23 |    |   |    |   |    |   |    |    |
| х     | 12      | 1     | .3 | 14 |   | 15 |   | 16 | 1 | 7  | 18 |
| $2^x$ |         |       |    |    |   |    |   |    |   |    |    |
|       |         |       |    |    |   |    |   |    |   |    |    |

2. Complete the table of powers of 3.

| х              | 1  | 2     | 3     | 4  | 5 | 6  | 7 | 8  | 9  |
|----------------|----|-------|-------|----|---|----|---|----|----|
| 3 <sup>x</sup> |    |       |       |    |   |    |   |    |    |
|                | 31 | $3^2$ | $3^3$ |    |   |    |   |    |    |
| х              |    | 10    |       | 11 |   | 12 |   | 13 | 14 |
| 3 <sup>x</sup> |    |       |       |    |   |    |   |    |    |
|                |    |       |       |    |   |    |   |    |    |

3. Complete the table. You can read the values from the tables you made in questions 1 and 2.

| Product of powers                                 | Repeated<br>factor | Power of power notation | Total<br>number of<br>repetitions | Simplified form | Value |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-------|
| $2^4 \times 2^4 \times 2^4$                       | 2                  | $(2^4)^3$               | 12                                | 212             | 4 096 |
| $3^2 \times 3^2 \times 3^2 \times 3^2$            |                    |                         |                                   |                 |       |
| $2^3 \times 2^3 \times 2^3 \times 2^3 \times 2^3$ |                    |                         |                                   |                 |       |
| $3^4 \times 3^4 \times 3^4$                       |                    |                         |                                   |                 |       |
| $2^6 \times 2^6 \times 2^6$                       |                    |                         |                                   |                 |       |

4. Use your table of powers of 2 to find the answers for the following:

(b)  $(2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2) = \dots = \dots = \dots$ 

(c)  $16^3 = \dots = \dots = \dots$ 

| 5.       | Use  | e your table of powers of 2 to   | find the answers for the following:  |   |
|----------|--|--|--|---|
|          | (a)  | Is $16^3 = 2^{12}$ ?   | (b) Is $2^4 \times 2^4 \times 2^4 = 2^{12}$  | • • • • •                               |
|          | (c)  | Is $2^4 \times 2^3 = 2^{12}$ ?   | (d) Is $(2^4)^3 = 2^4 \times 2^4 \times 2^4$ ?   | • • • • •                               |
|          | (e)  | Is $(2^4)^3 = 2^{12}$ ?  | (f) Is $(2^4)^3 = 2^{4+3}$ ?   | • • • • •                               |
|          | (g)  | Is $(2^4)^3 = 2^{4 \times 3}$ ?  | (h) Is $(2^2)^5 = 2^{2+5}$ ?   | • • • • •                               |
| _        | (-)  |  | and the last of Control of the Contr |   |
| о.       | (a)  | Express 8° as a power of 2. It   | may help to first express 8 as a pow   | er of Z.                                |
|          |  |  | (23) be expressed as (23)52  |   |
|          | (D)  | Call $(Z^{\circ}) \times (Z^{\circ}) \times (Z^{\circ}) \times (Z^{\circ}) \times$   | $(2^3)$ be expressed as $(2^3)^5$ ?  | • |
|          | (c)  | Is $(2^{3})^{3} = 2^{3+3}$ or is $(2^{3})^{3} = 2^{3 \times 3}$  | 5?   | • |
| 7.       | (a)  | Express $4^3$ as a power of 2.   |  |   |
|          |  |  |  |   |
|          |  |  | press your answer as a single power  |   |
|          |  |  |  |   |
|          | (c)  |  | essed as $(2^2)^3$ ?   |   |
|          | (d)  | Is $(2^2)^3 = 2^{2+3}$ or is $(2^2)^3 = 2^{2\times}$   | <sup>3</sup> ?   |   |
|          |  |  | •  | • • • • • • • • • • • • •               |
| O        |  |  |  |   |
| 8.       | Sim  | iplify the following.  |  |   |
| 8.       | Sim  | inplify the following.<br><b>ample:</b> $(10^2)^2 = 10^2 \times 10^2 = 10^2$   | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10000$   |   |
| 8.       | Sim<br>Exa   | ample: $(10^2)^2 = 10^2 \times 10^2 = 10^3$  | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$   |   |
| 8.       | Sim<br>Exa<br>(a)<br>(c)   | applify the following.  (33) <sup>2</sup> (24) <sup>2</sup>  | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$   | ••••••                                  |
| 8.       | Sim <b>Exa</b> (a) (c) (e)   | nplify the following.<br>ample: $(10^2)^2 = 10^2 \times 10^2 = 1$  | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$   | ••••••                                  |
|          | Sim <b>Exa</b> (a) (c) (e) (g)   | applify the following.  (33) <sup>2</sup> $(2^{4})^{2}$ $(3^{3})^{3}$ $(5^{4})^{3}$  | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$   | ••••••                                  |
|          | Sim <b>Exa</b> (a) (c) (e) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> )                                 | nplify the following.<br>ample: $(10^2)^2 = 10^2 \times 10^2 = 1$  | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$   | ••••••                                  |
|          | Sim <b>Exa</b> (a) (c) (e) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> ) a is                            | ample: $(10^2)^2 = 10^2 \times 10^2 = 10^3$<br>$(3^3)^2$<br>$(2^4)^2$<br>$(3^3)^3$<br>$(5^4)^3$<br>$(5^4)^3$<br>$(5^4)^3$ , where $m$ and $n$ are not $n$  | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$   | ••••••                                  |
|          | Sim <b>Exa</b> (a) (c) (e) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> ) a is                            | raplify the following.  (33) <sup>2</sup> (24) <sup>2</sup> (33) <sup>3</sup> (54) <sup></sup> | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$ Latural numbers and   |   |
|          | Sim (a) (c) (e) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> ) a is Sim (a)                               | ample: $(10^2)^2 = 10^2 \times 10^2 = 10^3$<br>$(3^3)^2$<br>$(2^4)^2$<br>$(3^3)^3$<br>$(5^4)^3$<br>$(5^4)^3$<br>$(5^4)^3$<br>not equal to zero.  | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$ hatural numbers and   |   |
| 9.       | Sim (a) (c) (e) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> ) (a) (c)                                    | raplify the following.  (33) <sup>2</sup> (2 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>2</sup> (3 <sup>3</sup> ) <sup>3</sup> (5 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>3</sup> (5 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>3</sup> (5 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>10</sup> (6 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>4</sup>   | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$ Latural numbers and  (b) $(10^4)^5$ (d) $(5^4)^{10}$  |   |
| 9.       | Sim (a) (c) (e) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> ) (a) (c)                                    | raplify the following.  (33) <sup>2</sup> (2 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>2</sup> (3 <sup>3</sup> ) <sup>3</sup> (5 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>3</sup> (5 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>3</sup> (5 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>10</sup> (6 <sup>4</sup> ) <sup>4</sup>   | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$ hatural numbers and   |   |
| 9.       | Sim (a) (c) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> ) (a) (c) .Wr:                                   | raplify the following.  (33) <sup>2</sup> (24) <sup>2</sup> (33) <sup>3</sup> (54) <sup>3</sup> (54) <sup>3</sup> (54) <sup>10</sup> (64) <sup>4</sup> ite 5 <sup>12</sup> as a power of powers of   | $0^{2+2} = 10^4 = 10\ 000$ (b) $(4^3)^2$ (d) $(9^2)^2$ (f) $(4^3)^3$ (h) $(9^2)^3$ Latural numbers and  (b) $(10^4)^5$ (d) $(5^4)^{10}$  |   |
| 9.<br>10 | Sim (a) (c) (g) (a <sup>m</sup> ) (a) (c) (c) (d) Write sim (2) <sup>5</sup> = 2 | raplify the following.  (33) <sup>2</sup> (24) <sup>2</sup> (33) <sup>3</sup> (54) <sup>3</sup> (54) <sup>3</sup> (54) <sup>10</sup> (64) <sup>4</sup> ite 5 <sup>12</sup> as a power of powers of   | $(b) (4^3)^2$ $(d) (9^2)^2$ $(f) (4^3)^3$ $(h) (9^2)^3$ That the following states and $(b) (10^4)^5$ $(d) (5^4)^{10}$ If 5 in two different ways.  As a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are states are states as a product of powers or we can use the states are s    |   |

 $2 \times 5$  factors = 10 factors

11. Complete the table.

|     | Expression   | Write as a product of the powers and then simplify                                     | Use the rule $(a^m)^n$ to simplify  |
|-----|--------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| (a) | $(a^4)^5$    | $a^{4} \times a^{4} \times a^{4} \times a^{4} \times a^{4}$ $= a^{4+4+4+4+4} = a^{20}$ | $(a^4)^5 = a^{4 \times 5} = a^{20}$ |
| (b) | $(b^{10})^5$ |  |                                     |
| (c) | $(x^7)^3$    |  |                                     |
| (d) |              | $S^{6} \times S^{6} \times S^{6} \times S^{6}$ $= S^{6+6+6+6}$ $= S^{24}$              |                                     |
| (e) |              |  | $y^{3\times7} = y^{21}$             |

#### **POWER OF A PRODUCT**

1. Complete the table. You may use your calculator when you are not sure of a value.

|     | х              | 1         | 2         | 3           | 4 | 5 |
|-----|----------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|---|---|
| (a) | $2^x$          | $2^1 = 2$ |           |             |   |   |
| (b) | $3^x$          |           | $3^2 = 9$ |             |   |   |
| (c) | 6 <sup>x</sup> |           |           | $6^3 = 216$ |   |   |

2. Use the table in question 1 to answer the questions below. Are these statements true or false? If a statement is false rewrite it as a correct statement.

(a) 
$$6^2 = 2^2 \times 3^2$$

(b) 
$$6^3 = 2^3 \times 3^3$$

••••••••••••

(c) 
$$6^5 = 2^5 \times 3^5$$

(d) 
$$6^8 = 2^4 \times 3^4$$

#### 3. Complete the table.

|     | Expression             | The bases of the expression are factors of | Equivalent expression |
|-----|------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| (a) | $2^6 \times 5^6$       | 10   | 106                   |
| (b) | $3^2 \times 4^2$       |  |                       |
| (c) | $4^2 \times 2^2$       |  |                       |
| (d) |                        |  | 56 <sup>5</sup>       |
| (e) |                        |  | $30^{3}$              |
| (f) | $3^5 \times x^5$       | 3 <i>x</i>                                 | $(3x)^5$              |
| (g) | $7^2 \times Z^2$       |  |                       |
| (h) | $4^3 \times y^3$       |  |                       |
| (i) |                        |  | $(2m)^6$              |
| (j) |                        |  | $(2m)^3$              |
| (k) | $2^{10} \times y^{10}$ |  | $(2y)^{10}$           |

 $12^2$  can be written in terms of its factors as  $(2 \times 6)^2$  or as  $(3 \times 4)^2$ .

We already know that  $12^2 = 144$ .

What this tells us is that both  $(2 \times 6)^2$  and  $(3 \times 4)^2$  also equal 144.

We write 
$$12^2 = (2 \times 6)^2$$
 or  $12^2 = (3 \times 4)^2$   
=  $2^2 \times 6^2$  =  $4 \times 36$  =  $9 \times 16$   
=  $144$ 

A product raised to a power is the product of the factors each raised to the same power.

Using symbols, we write  $(a \times b)^m = a^m \times b^m$ , where m is a natural number and a and b are not equal to zero.

4. Write each of the following expressions as an expression with one base:

**Example:**  $3^{10} \times 2^{10} = (3 \times 2)^{10} = 6^{10}$ 

(a) 
$$3^2 \times 5^2$$

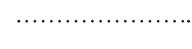
(b) 
$$5^3 \times 2^3$$

(c) 
$$7^4 \times 4^4$$

(d) 
$$2^3 \times 6^3$$

(e) 
$$4^4 \times 2^4$$

(f) 
$$5^2 \times 7^2$$



5. Write the following as a product of powers:

**Example:**  $(3x)^3 = 3^3 \times x^3 = 27x^3$ 

(a) 
$$6^3$$

(e) 
$$18^2$$

(f) 
$$(st)^7$$

(g) 
$$(ab)^3$$

(h) 
$$(2x)^2$$

(i) 
$$(3y)^5$$

(j)  $(3c)^2$ 

(k)  $(gh)^4$ 

(1)  $(4x)^3$ 

6. Simplify the following expressions:

**Example:**  $3^2 \times m^2 = 9 \times m^2 = 9m^2$ 

(a) 
$$3^5 \times b^5$$

(b) 
$$2^6 \times y^6$$

(c) 
$$x^2 \times y^2$$

(d) 
$$10^4 \times x^4$$

(e) 
$$3^3 \times x^3$$

(f) 
$$5^2 \times t^2$$

(g) 
$$6^3 \times m^7$$

(h) 
$$12^2 \times a^2$$

(i) 
$$n^3 \times p^9$$

(h) 
$$12^2 \times a^2$$

(i) 
$$n^3 \times p^9$$

#### A QUOTIENT OF POWERS

Consider the following table:

| Х              | 1 | 2  | 3   | 4   | 5     | 6      |
|----------------|---|----|-----|-----|-------|--------|
| $2^x$          | 2 | 4  | 8   | 16  | 32    | 64     |
| 3 <sup>x</sup> | 3 | 9  | 27  | 81  | 243   | 729    |
| 5 <sup>x</sup> | 5 | 25 | 125 | 625 | 3 125 | 15 625 |

Answer questions 1 to 4 by referring to the table when you need to.

- 1. Give the value of each of the following:
  - (a)  $3^4$

(b)  $2^5$ 

(c)  $5^6$ 

- 2. (a) Calculate  $3^6 \div 3^3$  (Read the values of  $3^6$  and  $3^3$  from the table and then divide. You may use a calculator where necessary.)
  - (b) Calculate 3<sup>6-3</sup>

•••••

(c) Is  $3^6 \div 3^3$  equal to  $3^3$ ? Explain.

To calculate  $4^{5-3}$  we first do the calculation in the exponent, that is, we subtract 3 from 5. Then we can calculate  $4^2$  as  $4 \times 4 = 16$ .

- 3. (a) Calculate the value of  $2^{6-2}$
- (b) Calculate the value of  $2^6 \div 2^2$

(c) Calculate the value of  $2^{6 \div 2}$ 

(d) Read from the table the value of  $2^3$ 

(e) Read from the table the value of  $2^4$ 

•••••

(f) Which of the statements below is true? Give an explanation for your answer.

A. 
$$2^6 \div 2^2 = 2^{6-2} = 2^4$$

B. 
$$2^6 \div 2^2 = 2^{6 \div 2} = 2^3$$

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

| 4  | Constructions of the estatement had a sure and two  | as and subject one folior. If a statement is folior |
|----|---|---|
| 4. | rewrite it as a correct statement.  | ue and which are false. If a statement is false     |
|    | (a) $5^6 \div 5^4 = 5^{6 \div 4}$   | (b) $3^{4-1} = 3^4 \div 3$                          |
|    |   |   |
|    |   | •••••   |
|    | ••••••  | •••••   |
|    | •••••   | •••••   |
|    | (c) $5^6 \div 5 = 5^{6-1}$  | (d) $2^5 \div 2^3 = 2^2$                            |
|    |   | •••••   |
|    | •   | ••••••  |
|    | •   | •••••••   |
|    | $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$<br>where $m$ and $n$ are natural numbers and $n$<br>number greater than $n$ and $a$ is not zero. | <i>n</i> is a                                       |
| 5. | Simplify the following. Do not use a calcu  | ılator.   |
|    |   |   |
|    | <b>Example:</b> $3^{17} \div 3^{12} = 3^{17-12} = 3^5 = 243$  |   |
|    | <b>Example:</b> $3^{17} \div 3^{12} = 3^{17-12} = 3^3 = 243$<br>(a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$                                  | (b) $6^{17} \div 6^{14}$                            |
|    | -   | (b) $6^{17} \div 6^{14}$                            |
|    | -   | (b) $6^{17} \div 6^{14}$                            |
|    | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$  | (b) $6^{17} \div 6^{14}$                            |
|    | -   | (b) $6^{17} \div 6^{14}$ (d) $5^{11} \div 5^{8}$    |
|    | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$  |   |
|    | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$  |   |
|    | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$  |   |
| 6. | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$<br>(c) $10^{20} \div 10^{14}$  |   |
| 6. | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$  |   |
| 6. | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$ (b) $10^{20} \div 10^{14}$ Simplify:   | (d) $5^{11} \div 5^{8}$                             |
| 6. | (a) $2^{12} \div 2^{10}$ (b) $10^{20} \div 10^{14}$ Simplify:   | (d) 5 <sup>11</sup> ÷ 5 <sup>8</sup>                |

#### THE POWER OF ZERO

| 1. Simplify the following |
|---------------------------|
|---------------------------|

(a) 
$$2^{12} \div 2^{12}$$

(b) 
$$6^{17} \div 6^{17}$$

(c) 
$$6^{14} \div 6^{14}$$

(d) 
$$2^{10} \div 2^{10}$$

We define  $a^0 = 1$ . Any number raised to the power of zero is always equal to 1.

2. Simplify the following:

(a) 
$$100^{\circ}$$

(b) 
$$x^0$$

(c) 
$$(100x)^0$$
 (d)  $(5x^3)^0$ 

(d) 
$$(5x^3)^6$$

#### 3.4 Calculations

#### **MIXED OPERATIONS**

Simplify the following:

1. 
$$3^3 + \sqrt[3]{-27} \times 2$$

2. 
$$5 \times (2+3)^2 + (-1)^0$$

3. 
$$3^2 \times 2^3 + 5 \times \sqrt{100}$$

4. 
$$\frac{\sqrt[3]{1000}}{\sqrt{100}} + (4-1)^2$$

5. 
$$\sqrt{16} \times \sqrt{16} + \sqrt[3]{216} + 3^2 \times 10$$
 6.  $4^3 \div 2^3 + \sqrt{144}$ 

#### 3.5 Squares, cubes and roots of rational numbers

#### **SQUARING A FRACTION**

Squaring or cubing a fraction or a decimal fraction is no different from squaring or cubing an integer.

1. Complete the table.

|     | Fraction      | Square the fraction              | Value of the square of the fraction            |
|-----|---------------|----------------------------------|--|
| (a) | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$ |
| (b) | $\frac{2}{3}$ |                                  |  |
| (c) | $\frac{3}{4}$ |                                  |  |
| (d) | $\frac{2}{5}$ |                                  |  |
| (e) | $\frac{3}{5}$ |                                  |  |
| (f) | $\frac{2}{6}$ |                                  |  |
| (g) | $\frac{3}{7}$ |                                  |  |
| (h) | 11<br>12      |                                  |  |

2. Calculate the following:

| $\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2$ |
|------------------------------|
|                              |

(b) 
$$\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2$$
 (c)  $\left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^2$ 

(c) 
$$\left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^2$$

3. (a) Use the fact that 0,6 can be written as  $\frac{6}{10}$  to calculate  $(0,6)^2$ .

(b) Use the fact that 0,8 can be written as  $\frac{8}{10}$  to calculate  $(0,8)^2$ .

#### FINDING THE SQUARE ROOT OF A FRACTION

1. Complete the table.

|     | Fraction          | Writing the fraction as a product of factors | Square root |
|-----|-------------------|--|-------------|
| (a) | $\frac{81}{121}$  |  |             |
| (b) | 64<br>81          |  |             |
| (c) | 49<br>169         |  |             |
| (d) | $\frac{100}{225}$ |  |             |

2. Determine the following:

(a) 
$$\sqrt{\frac{25}{16}}$$

(b) 
$$\sqrt{\frac{81}{144}}$$

(b) 
$$\sqrt{\frac{81}{144}}$$
 (c)  $\sqrt{\frac{400}{900}}$  (d)  $\sqrt{\frac{36}{81}}$ 

(d) 
$$\sqrt{\frac{36}{81}}$$

| 3. | (a) | Use the fact that 0,01 c | can be written as $\frac{1}{100}$ | to calculate $\sqrt{0.01}$ . |
|----|-----|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
|----|-----|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|

(b) Use the fact that 0,49 can be written as  $\frac{49}{100}$  to calculate  $\sqrt{0,49}$ .

4. Calculate the following:

(a) 
$$\sqrt{0.09}$$

(b) 
$$\sqrt{0,64}$$
 (c)  $\sqrt{1,44}$ 

(c) 
$$\sqrt{1,44}$$

#### **CUBING A FRACTION**

One half cubed is equal to one eighth.

We write this as  $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{8}$ 

1. Calculate the following:

(a) 
$$\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^3$$

(a) 
$$\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^3$$
 (b)  $\left(\frac{5}{10}\right)^3$  (c)  $\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^3$ 

(c) 
$$\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^3$$

(d) 
$$\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^3$$

2. (a) Use the fact that 0,6 can be written as  $\frac{6}{10}$  to find  $(0,6)^3$ .

(b) Use the fact that 0,8 can be written as  $\frac{8}{10}$  to calculate  $(0,8)^3$ .

(c) Use the fact that 0,7 can be written as  $\frac{7}{10}$  to calculate  $(0,7)^3$ .

#### 3.6 Scientific notation

#### **VERY LARGE NUMBERS**

1. Express each of the following as a single number. Do not use a calculator.

**Example:**  $7,56 \times 100$  can be written as 756.

(a)  $3,45 \times 100$ 

(b)  $3,45 \times 10$ 

(c)  $3,45 \times 1000$ 

(d)  $2,34 \times 10^2$ 

(e)  $2,34 \times 10$ 

(f)  $2,34 \times 10^3$ 

(g)  $10^4 \times 10^2$ 

(h)  $10^{\circ} \times 10^{\circ}$ 

(i)  $3.4 \times 10^5$ 

••••••

••••••

We can write  $136\,000\,000$  as  $1,36 \times 10^8$ .

 $1,36 \times 10^8$  is called the **scientific notation** for  $136\,000\,000$ .

In scientific notation, a number is expressed in two parts: a number between 1 and 10 multiplied by a power of 10. The exponent must always be an integer.

2. Write the following numbers in scientific notation:

(a) 367 000 000

(b) 21 900 000

(c) 600 000 000 000

(d) 178

3. Write each of the following numbers in the ordinary way.

**For example:**  $3.4 \times 10^5$  written in the ordinary way is  $340\ 000$ .

(a)  $1,24 \times 10^8$ 

(b)  $9,2074 \times 10^4$ 

(c)  $1,04 \times 10^6$ 

(d)  $2,05 \times 10^3$ 

.....

- 4. The age of the universe is 15 000 000 000 years. Express the age of the universe in scientific notation.
- 5. The average distance from the Earth to the Sun is 149 600 000 km. Express this distance in scientific notation.

Because it is easier to multiply powers of ten without a calculator, **scientific notation** makes it possible to do calculations in your head.

6. Explain why the number  $24 \times 10^3$  is not in scientific notation.

••••••••••••••••••••••••

7. Calculate the following. Do not use a calculator.

**Example:**  $3\ 000\ 000 \times 90\ 000\ 000 = 3 \times 10^6 \times 9 \times 10^7 = 3 \times 9 \times 10^{6+7}$ =  $27 \times 10^{13} = 270\ 000\ 000\ 000$ 

(a)  $13\,000 \times 150\,000$ 

(b)  $200 \times 6000000$ 

(c)  $120\,000 \times 120\,000\,000$  (d)  $2,5 \times 40\,000\,000$ 

- 8. Use > or < to compare these numbers:
  - (a)  $1.3 \times 10^9$   $2.4 \times 10^7$
- (b)  $6.9 \times 10^2$  4.5 ×  $10^3$
- (c)  $7.3 \times 10^4$   $7.3 \times 10^2$
- (d)  $3.9 \times 10^6$   $3.7 \times 10^7$

#### WORKSHEET

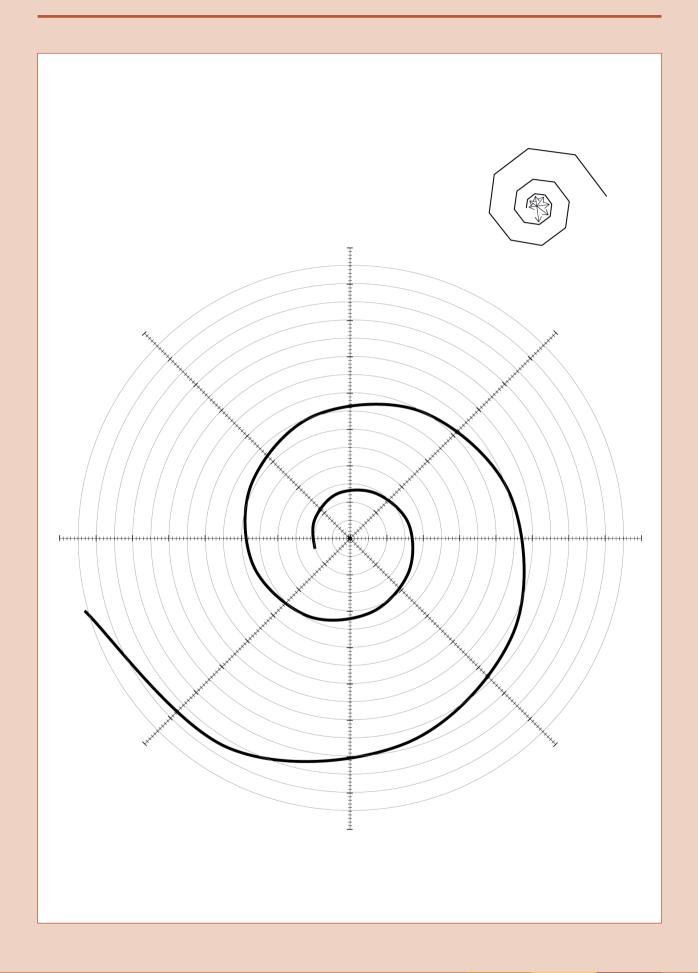
| 1. | Calculate:                              |   |   |   |
|----|---|---|---|---|
|    | (a) 11 <sup>2</sup>                     | ••••••  | (b) $3^2 \times 4^2$                    |   |
|    | (c) 6 <sup>3</sup>                      | •           | (d) $\sqrt{121}$                        | •••••                                   |
|    | $(e) (-3)^2$                            | •••••   | (f) <sup>3</sup> √125                   | •••••                                   |
| 2. | Simplify:                               |   |   |   |
|    | (a) $3^4 \times m^6$                    | •••••   | (b) $b^2 \times n^6$                    | •••••                                   |
|    | (c) $y^{12} \div y^5$                   | ••••••  | (d) $(10^2)^3$                          | •••••                                   |
|    | (e) $(2w^2)^3$                          | •••••   | (f) (3d <sup>5</sup> )(2a               | ) <sup>3</sup>                          |
| 3. | Calculate:                              |   |   |   |
|    | (a) $\left(\frac{2}{5}\right)^2$        | •••••   | (b) $\sqrt{\frac{9}{25}}$               | •••••                                   |
|    | $(c) (6^4y^2)^0$                        | •••••   | (d) $(0,7)^2$                           | • |
| 4. | Simplify:                               |   |   |   |
|    | (a) $(2^2 + 4)$                         | $^{2}+\frac{6^{2}}{3^{2}}$                        | (b) ∛-125                               | $-5 \times 3^2$                         |
|    | • | •           | •••••                                   | • |
|    |   |   |   |   |
|    |   |   |   |   |
|    | • • • • • • • • • •                     | •           | •••••                                   | • |
| 5. | Write $3 \times 1$                      | $O^9$ in the ordinary way. $\dots$                | • |   |
| 6. |   | ds appeared on Earth about<br>cientific notation. | : 208 000 00                            | 00 years ago. Write this                |
|    | • | •           | • • • • • • • • • • •                   |   |

**EXPONENTS** 

# CHAPTER 4 Numeric and geometric patterns

In this chapter you will learn to create, recognise, describe, extend and make generalisations about numeric and geometric patterns. Patterns allow us to make predictions. You will also work with different representations of patterns, such as flow diagrams and tables.

| 4.1 | The term-term relationship in a sequence     | . 79 |
|-----|--|------|
| 4.2 | The position–term relationship in a sequence | . 84 |
| 4.3 | Investigate and extend geometric patterns    | . 86 |
| 4.4 | Describe patterns in different ways          | . 90 |



Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 78 2014/07/03 10:53:38 AM

## 4 Numeric and geometric patterns

#### 4.1 The term—term relationship in a sequence

#### **GOING FROM ONE TERM TO THE NEXT**

Write down the next three numbers in each of the sequences below. Also explain in writing, in each case, how you figured out what the numbers should be.

A list of numbers which form a pattern is called a **sequence**. Each number in a sequence is called a **term** of the sequence. The first number is the first term of the sequence.

|    |                       | 2; 5; 8; 11; 14; 17; 20; 23;     |
|----|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 2. | Sequence B:           | 4; 5; 8; 13; 20; 29; 40;         |
| 3. | Sequence C:           | 1; 2; 4; 8; 16; 32; 64;          |
| 4. | Sequence D:           | 3; 5; 7; 9; 11; 13; 15; 17; 19;  |
| 5. | Sequence E:           | 4; 5; 7; 10; 14; 19; 25; 32; 40; |
|    |                       | 2; 6; 18; 54; 162; 486;          |
|    |                       | 1; 5; 9; 13; 17; 21; 25; 29; 33; |
|    |                       | 2; 4; 8; 16; 32; 64;             |
|    | • • • • • • • • • • • |                                  |

Numbers that follow one another are said to be **consecutive**.

#### ADDING OR SUBTRACTING THE SAME NUMBER

1. Which sequences on the previous page are of the same kind as sequence A? Explain your answer.

••••••

Amanda explains how she figured out how to continue sequence A:

I looked at the first two numbers in the sequence and saw that I needed 3 to go from 2 to 5. I looked further and saw that I also needed 3 to go from 5 to 8. I tested that and it worked for all the next numbers.

This gave me a rule I could use to extend the sequence: add 3 to each number to find the next number in the pattern.

Tamara says you can also find the pattern by working backwards and subtracting 3 each time:

$$14-3=11$$
;  $11-3=8$ ;  $8-3=5$ ;  $5-3=2$ 

When the **differences** between consecutive terms of a sequence are the same, we say the difference is **constant**.

2. Provide a rule to describe the relationship between the numbers in the sequence. Use this rule to calculate the missing numbers in the sequence.

(a) 1; 8; 15; ; ; ; ; ; ...

.....

(b) 10 020; ; ; 9 980; 9 970; ; 9 940; 9 930; ...

(c) 1,5; 3,0; 4,5; ; ; ; ; ...

(e) 1,0,0,0,1,0,...,,...,...,...,...

(d) 2,2; 4,0; 5,8; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ...;

(e)  $45\frac{3}{4}$ ;  $46\frac{1}{2}$ ;  $47\frac{1}{4}$ ; 48; ; ; ; ; ...

(f) ; 100,49; 100,38; 100,27; ; ; 99,94; 99,83; 99,72; ...

•••••

3. Complete the table below.

| Input number     | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4  | 5 |    | 12 |    | n |
|------------------|---|---|---|----|---|----|----|----|---|
| Input number + 7 | 8 |   |   | 11 |   | 15 |    | 30 |   |

#### MULTIPLYING OR DIVIDING WITH THE SAME NUMBER

Take another look at sequence F: 2; 6; 18; 54; 162; 486; ...

Piet explains that he figured out how to continue the sequence F:

*I looked at the first two terms in the sequence and wrote*  $2 \times ? = 6$ .

When I multiplied the first number by 3, I got the second number:  $2 \times 3 = 6$ .

I then checked to see if I could find the next number if I multiplied 6 by 3:  $6 \times 3 = 18$ .

*I continued checking in this way:*  $18 \times 3 = 54$ ;  $54 \times 3 = 162$  and so on.

This gave me a rule I can use to extend the sequence and my rule was: multiply each number by 3 to calculate the next number in the sequence.

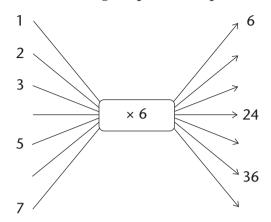
Zinhle says you can also find the pattern by working backwards and dividing by 3 each time:

$$54 \div 3 = 18$$
;  $18 \div 3 = 6$ ;  $6 \div 3 = 2$ 

The number that we multiply with to get the next term in the sequence is called a **ratio**. If the number we multiply with remains the same throughout the sequence, we say it is a **constant ratio**.

| 1. | Check whether Piet's reasoning works for sequence H: 2; 4; 8; 16; 32; 64;  |
|----|--|
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
| 2. | Describe, in words, the rule for finding the next number in the sequence. Also write down the next five terms of the sequence if the pattern is continued. |
|    | (a) 1; 10; 100; 1 000;   |
|    | (b) 16; 8; 4; 2;   |
|    | (c) 7; -21; 63; -189;  |
|    | (d) 3; 12, 48;   |
|    | (e) 2 187; –729; 243; –81;   |
|    |  |

3. (a) Fill in the missing output and input numbers:



What is the term-to-term rule for the output numbers here,  $+ 6 \text{ or } \times 6$ ?

(b) Complete the table below:

| Input numbers  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4  | 5 |    | 12 | X |
|----------------|---|---|---|----|---|----|----|---|
| Output numbers | 6 |   |   | 24 |   | 36 |    |   |

#### **NEITHER ADDING NOR MULTIPLYING BY THE SAME NUMBER**

1. Consider sequences A to H again and answer the questions that follow:

Sequence A: 2; 5; 8; 11; 14; 17; 20; 23; ...

Sequence B: 4; 5; 8; 13; 20; 29; 40; ...

Sequence C: 1; 2; 4; 8; 16; 32; 64; ...

Sequence D: 3; 5; 7; 9; 11; 13; 15; 17; 19; ...

Sequence E: 4; 5; 7; 10; 14; 19; 25; 32; 40; ...

Sequence F: 2; 6; 18; 54; 162; 486; ...

Sequence G: 1; 5; 9; 13; 17; 21; 25; 29; 33; ...

Sequence H: 2; 4; 8; 16; 32; 64; ....

(a) Which other sequence(s) is/are of the same kind as sequence B? Explain.

.....

(b) In what way are sequences B and E different from the other sequences?

•••••

There are sequences where there is neither a constant difference nor a constant ratio between consecutive terms and yet a pattern still exists, as in the case of sequences B and E.

| 2. | Consider the sequence: 10; 17; 26; 37; 50; (a) Write down the next five numbers in the sequence.   |
|----|--|
|    | (b) Eric observed that he can calculate the next term in the sequence as follows: $10 + 7 = 17$ ; $17 + 9 = 26$ ; $26 + 11 = 37$ . Use Eric's method to check whether your numbers in question (a) above are correct.                          |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
| 3. | Which of the statements below can Eric use to describe the relationship between the numbers in the sequence in question 2? Test the rule for the first three terms of the sequence and then simply write "yes" or "no" next to each statement. |
|    | (a) Increase the difference between consecutive terms by 2 each time   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (b) Increase the difference between consecutive terms by 1 each time   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | ••••••   |
|    | (c) Add two more than you added to get the previous term   |
|    | ••••••   |
|    |  |
|    |  |
| 4. | Provide a rule to describe the relationship between the numbers in the sequences below. Use your rule to provide the next five numbers in the sequence.  |
|    | (a) 1; 4; 9; 16; 25;   |
|    |  |
|    | (b) 2; 13; 26; 41; 58;   |
|    |  |
|    | (c) 4; 14; 29; 49; 74;   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (d) 5; 6; 8; 11; 15; 20;   |
|    |  |

#### 4.2 The position-term relationship in a sequence

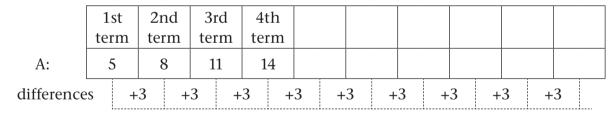
#### **USING POSITION TO MAKE PREDICTIONS**

1. Take another look at sequences A to H. Which sequence(s) are of the same kind as sequence A? Explain.

```
Sequence A: 2; 5; 8; 11; 14; 17; 20; 23;...
```

Sizwe has been thinking about Amanda and Tamara's explanations of how they worked out the rule for sequence A and has drawn up a table. He agrees with them but says that there is another rule that will also work. He explains:

*My table shows the terms in the sequence and the difference between consecutive terms:* 



Sizwe reasons that the following rule will also work:

Multiply the position of the number by 3 and add 2 to the answer. I can write this rule as a number sentence: Position of the number  $\times$  3 + 2

*I use my number sentence to check:*  $1 \times 3 + 2 = 5$ ;  $2 \times 3 + 2 = 8$ ;  $3 \times 3 + 2 = 11$ 

2. (a) What do the numbers in bold in Sizwe's number sentence stand for?

(b) What does the number 3 in Sizwe's number sentence stand for?

••••••

| A   | Consider the sequence 5; 8; 11; 14;  Apply Sizwe's rule to the sequence and determine:  a) term number 7 of the sequence (b) term number 10 of the sequence |   |               |               |   |   |   |  |  |
|-----|---|---|---------------|---------------|---|---|---|--|--|
| •   | (c) the 100th term of the sequence  |   |               |               |   |   |   |  |  |
| •   | •   | • • • • • • •                           | • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • | • • • • • • •                           | • • • • • • •                           | • • • • • • • •                         |  |  |
|     | Consider the sequence: 3; 5; 7 a) Use Sizwe's explanation t   |   |               |               | ce.                                     |   |   |  |  |
| (   | b) Determine the 28th term  |   | quence.       |               |   | • | • |  |  |
| 140 | ARE REFERENCE   |   |               |               |   |   |   |  |  |
|     | ore predictions applete the tables below by cal   | culating                                | the missii    | ng terms.     |   |   |   |  |  |
| 1.  | Position in sequence  | 1                                       | 2             | 3             | 4                                       | 10                                      | 54                                      |  |  |
|     | Term  | 4                                       | 7             | 10            | 13                                      |   |   |  |  |
| •   |   |   |               |               | •••••                                   |   | •••••                                   |  |  |
| •   |   | • |               |               | • | • | • |  |  |
| 2.  | Position in sequence  | 1                                       | 2             | 3             | 4                                       | 8                                       | 16                                      |  |  |
|     | Term  | 4                                       | 9             | 14            | 19                                      |   |   |  |  |
|     |   |   |               |               |   |   |   |  |  |
| •   | •   | • • • • • • •                           | • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • | • • • • • • •                           | • • • • • • •                           | • • • • • • •                           |  |  |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 85 2014/07/03 10:53:39 AM

CHAPTER 4: NUMERIC AND GEOMETRIC PATTERNS

| Position in sequence | 1 | 2  | 3  | 4 | 7 | 30 |
|----------------------|---|----|----|---|---|----|
| Term                 | 3 | 15 | 27 |   |   |    |
| J                    |   |    |    |   |   |    |

4. Use the rule **Position in the sequence** × **(position in the sequence + 1)** to complete the table below.

| Position in sequence | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|----------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Term                 | 2 |   |   |   |   |   |

#### 4.3 Investigating and extending geometric patterns

#### **SQUARE NUMBERS**

A factory makes window frames. Type 1 has one windowpane, type 2 has four windowpanes, type 3 has nine windowpanes, and so on.



1. How many windowpanes will there be in type 5?

2. How many windowpanes will there be in type 6?

3. How many windowpanes will there be in type 7?

4. How many windowpanes will there be in type 12? Explain.

**MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1** 

5. Complete the table. Show your calculations.

| Frame type            | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4  | 15 | 20 |
|-----------------------|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| Number of windowpanes | 1 | 4 | 9 | 16 |    |    |

In algebra we think of a square as a number that is obtained by multiplying a number by itself. So 1 is also a square because  $1 \times 1 = 1$ .

The symbol n is used below to represent the *position number* in the expression that gives the rule  $(n^2)$  when generalising.

1<sup>2</sup> 2<sup>2</sup> 3<sup>2</sup> 4<sup>2</sup> 5<sup>2</sup> ... n<sup>2</sup>

#### **TRIANGULAR NUMBERS**

Therese uses circles to form a pattern of triangular shapes:



- 1. If the pattern is continued, how many circles must Therese have
  - (a) in the bottom row of picture 5?
  - (b) in the second row from the bottom of picture 5?
  - (c) in the third row from the bottom of picture 5?
  - (d) in the second row from the top of picture 5?
  - (e) in the top row of picture 5?
  - (f) in total in picture 5? Show your calculation.

•••••

| 2. | How many circles does Therese need to form triangle picture 7? Show the calculation. |               |             |             |             |               |             |             |               |
|----|--|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
|    | •••••  | • • • • • • • | • • • • • • | • • • • • • | • • • • • • | • • • • • • • | • • • • • • | • • • • • • | • • • • • • • |
| 3. | . How many circles does Therese need to form triangle picture 8?                     |               |             |             |             |               |             |             |               |
|    |  |               |             |             |             |               |             |             |               |
| 4. | Complete the table   | e below. S    | how all     | your wo     | rk.         |               |             |             |               |
|    | Picture<br>number  | 1             | 2           | 3           | 4           | 5             | 6           | 12          | 15            |
|    | Number of circles  | 1             | 3           | 6           | 10          |               |             |             |               |
|    | •  |               |             | • • • • • • | • • • • •   |               |             | • • • • •   |               |
|    | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •  |               |             |             |             |               |             |             | • • • • • •   |

More than 2 500 years ago, Greek mathematicians already knew that the numbers 3, 6, 10, 15 and so on could form a triangular pattern. They represented these numbers with dots which they arranged in such a way that they formed equilateral triangles, hence the name **triangular numbers**. Algebraically we think of them as sums of consecutive natural numbers starting with 1.

Let us revisit the activity on triangular numbers that we did on the previous page.







Picture 2

**MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1** 



Picture 3



Picture 4

So far, we have determined the number of circles in the pattern by adding consecutive natural numbers. If we were asked to determine the number of circles in picture 200, for example, it would take us a very long time to do so. We need to find a quicker method of finding any triangular number in the sequence.

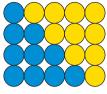
88

Consider the arrangement below.









Picture 3

Picture 4

We have added the yellow circles to the original blue circles and then rearranged the circles in such a way that they are in a rectangular form.

- 5. Picture 2 is 3 circles long and 2 circles wide. Complete the following sentences:
  - (a) Picture 3 is circles long and circles wide.
  - (b) Picture 1 is circles long and circle wide.
  - (c) Picture 4 is circles long and circles wide.
  - (d) Picture 5 is circles long and circles wide.
- 6. How many circles will there be in a picture that is:
  - (a) 10 circles long and 9 circles wide?
  - (b) 7 circles long and 6 circles wide?
  - (c) 6 circles long and 5 circles wide?
  - (d) 20 circles long and 19 circles wide?

Suppose we want to have a quicker method to determine the number of circles in picture 15. We know that picture 15 is 16 circles long and 15 circles wide. This gives a total of  $15 \times 16 = 240$  circles. But we must compensate for the fact that the yellow circles were originally not there by halving the total number of circles. In other words, the original figure has  $240 \div 2 = 120$  circles.

- 7. Use the above reasoning to calculate the number of circles in:
  - (a) picture 20

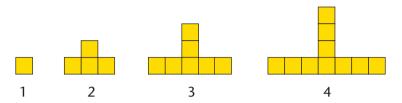
.....

(b) picture 35

#### 4.4 Describing patterns in different ways

#### T-SHAPED NUMBERS...

The pattern below is made from squares.



- 1. (a) How many squares will there be in pattern 5?
  - (b) How many squares will there be in pattern 15?
  - (c) Complete the table.

| Pattern number    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4  | 5 | 6 | 20 |
|-------------------|---|---|---|----|---|---|----|
| Number of squares | 1 | 4 | 7 | 10 |   |   |    |

Below are three different methods or plans to calculate the number of squares for pattern 20. Study each one carefully.

#### Plan A:

To get from 1 square to 4 squares, you have to add 3 squares. To get from 4 squares to 7 squares, you have to add 3 squares. To get from 7 squares to 10 squares, you have to add 3 squares for each pattern until pattern 20.

#### Plan B:

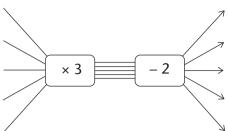
Multiply the pattern number by 3, and subtract 2. So pattern 20 will have  $20 \times 3 - 2$  squares.

#### Plan C:

The number of squares in pattern 5 is 13. So pattern 20 will have  $13 \times 4 = 52$  squares because  $20 = 5 \times 4$ .

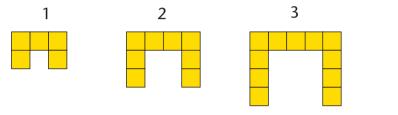
2. (a) Which method or plan (A, B or C) will give the right answer? Explain why.

(b) Which of the above plans did you use? Explain why?



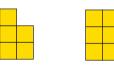
#### ... AND SOME OTHER SHAPES

1. Three figures are given below. Draw the next figure in the tile pattern.



2. (a) If the pattern is continued, how many tiles will there be in the 17th figure? Answer this question by analysing what happens.

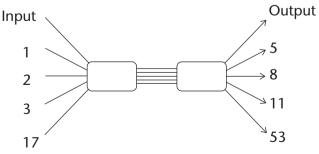
(b) Thato decides that it easier for him to see the pattern when the tiles are rearranged as shown here:





$$3 \times 1 + 2$$
  $3 \times 2 + 2$  Use Thato's method to determine the number of tiles in the 23rd figure.

(c) Complete the flow diagram below by writing the appropriate operators so that it can be used to calculate the number of tiles in any figure of the pattern.



(d) How many tiles will there be in the 50th figure if the pattern is continued?

CHAPTER 4: NUMERIC AND GEOMETRIC PATTERNS 91

#### **WORKSHEET**

| 1. | Write down the next four terms in each sequence. Also explain, in each case, how you figured out what the terms are. |
|----|--|
|    | (a) 2; 4; 8; 14; 22; 32; 44;   |
|    | •  |
|    | (b) 2; 6; 18; 54; 162;   |
|    |  |
|    | (c) 1; 7; 13; 19; 25;  |
|    | •  |
| _  |  |
| 2. | (a) Complete the table below by calculating the missing terms.   |

| Position in sequence | 1 | 2  | 3  | 4 | 5 | 7 | 10 |
|----------------------|---|----|----|---|---|---|----|
| Term                 | 3 | 10 | 17 |   |   |   |    |

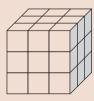
- (b) Write the rule to calculate the term from the position in the sequence in words.
- 3. Consider the stacks below.



Stack 1



Stack 2



Stack 3

- (a) How many cubes will there be in stack 5?
- (b) Complete the table.

| Stack number    | 1 | 2 | 3  | 4 | 5 | 6 | 10 |
|-----------------|---|---|----|---|---|---|----|
| Number of cubes | 1 | 8 | 27 |   |   |   |    |

(c) Write down the rule to calculate the number of cubes for any stack number.

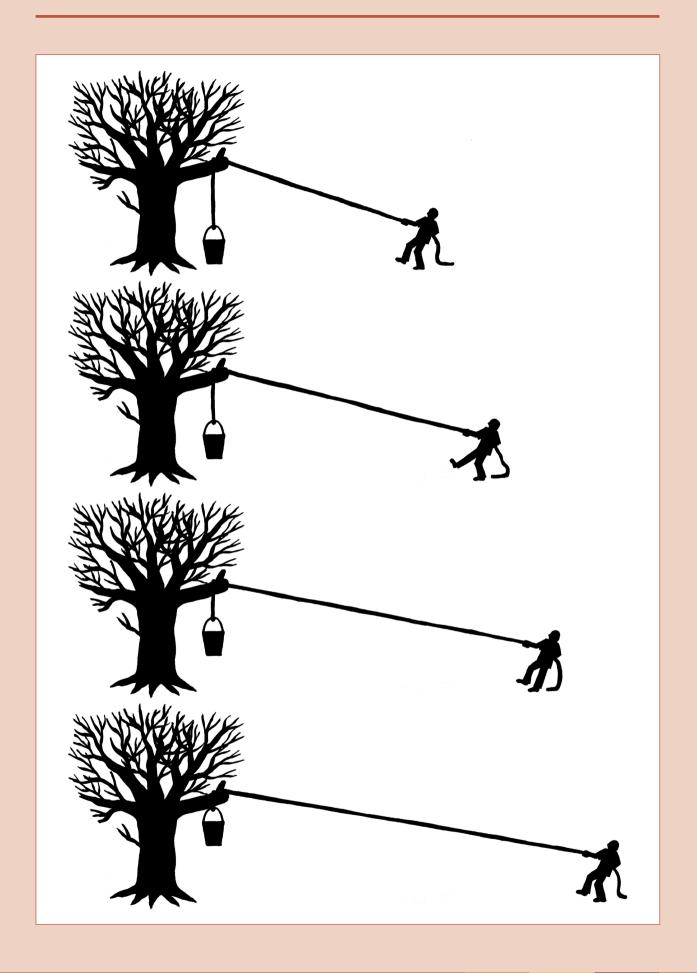
Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 92 2014/07/03 10:53:41 AM

# CHAPTER 5 Functions and relationships

In this chapter you will learn about quantities that change, such as the height of a tree. As the tree grows, the height changes. A quantity that changes is called a variable quantity or just a **variable**.

It is often the case that when one quantity changes, another quantity also changes. For example, as you make more and more calls on a phone, the total cost increases. In this case, we say there is a **relationship** between the amount of money you have to pay and the number of calls you make. You will learn how to describe a relationship between two quantities in different ways.

| 5.1 | Constant and variable quantities                  | . 95 |
|-----|---|------|
| 5.2 | Different ways to describe relationships          | 100  |
| 5.3 | Algebraic symbols for variables and relationships | 103  |



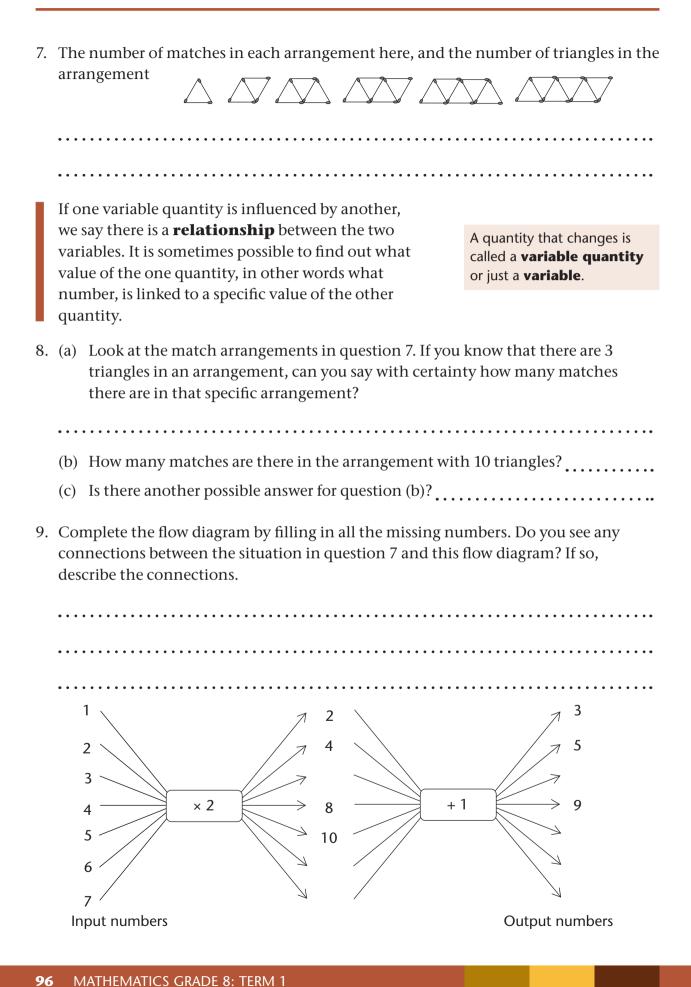
### 5 Functions and relationships

#### 5.1 Constant and variable quantities

#### **LOOKING FOR CONNECTIONS BETWEEN QUANTITIES**

Consider the following seven situations. There are two quantities in each situation. For each quantity, state whether it is constant (always the same number) or whether it changes. Also state, in each case, whether one quantity has an influence on the other. If it has, try to say how the one quantity will influence the other quantity.

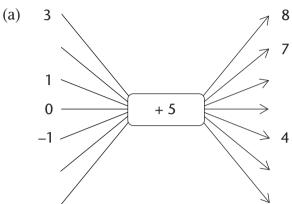
| 1. | Your age and the number of fingers on your hands                             |
|----|--|
|    | ••••••   |
|    |  |
| 2. | The number of calls you make and the airtime left on your cellphone          |
|    |  |
|    | ••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
| 3. | The length of your arm and your ability to finish Mathematics tests quickly  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••                                      |
|    | •••••  |
| 4. | The number of identical houses to be built and the number of bricks required |
|    |  |
|    | •••••  |
| 5. | The number of learners at a school and the length of the school day          |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••                                      |
|    | •••••  |
| 6. | The number of learners at a school and the number of classrooms needed       |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    |  |



#### **COMPLETING SOME FLOW DIAGRAMS**

A relationship between two quantities can be shown with a flow diagram, such as those below. Unfortunately, only some of the numbers can be shown on a flow diagram.

1. Calculate the output numbers for the flow diagram below. Some input numbers are missing. Choose and insert your own input numbers.



Each input number in a flow diagram has a corresponding **output number**. The first (top) **input number** corresponds to the first output number. The second input number corresponds to the second output number and so on.

We call +5 the **operator**.

(b) What type of numbers are the given input numbers?

•••••

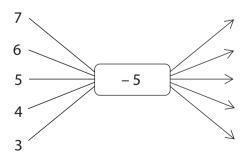
(c) In the above flow diagram, the output number 8 corresponds to the input number 3. Complete the following sentences:

In the relationship shown in the above flow diagram, the output number  $\dots$  corresponds to the input number -1.

*The input number . . . . corresponds to the output number 7.* 

If more places are added to the flow diagram, the input number .... will correspond to the output number 31.

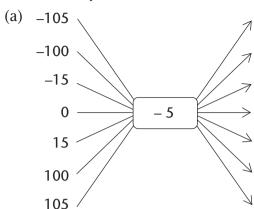
2. (a) Complete this flow diagram.

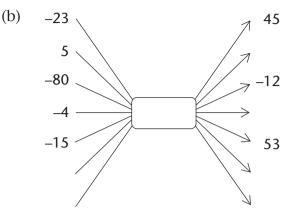


(b) Compare this flow diagram to the flow diagram in question 1. What link do you find between the two?

•••••

3. Complete the flow diagrams below. You have to find out what the **operator** for (b) is, and fill it in yourself.

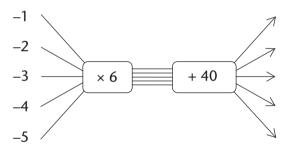




(c) What number can you add in (a), instead of subtracting 5, that will produce the same output numbers?

(d) What number can you subtract in (b), instead of adding a number, that will produce the same output numbers?

4. Complete the flow diagram:



A completed flow diagram shows two kinds of information:

• It shows what calculations are done to produce the output numbers.

• It shows which output number is connected to which input number.

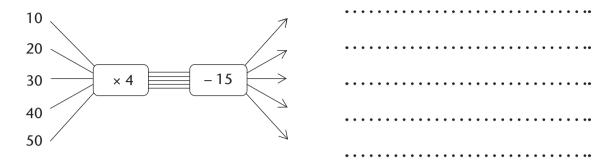
The flow diagram that you have completed in question 4 shows the following information:

• Each input number is multiplied by 6, then 40 is added to produce the output numbers.

• The input and output numbers are connected as shown in the table below.

| Input numbers  | -1 | -2 | -3 | -4 | -5 |
|----------------|----|----|----|----|----|
| Output numbers | 34 | 28 | 22 | 16 | 10 |

5. (a) Describe in words how the output numbers below can be calculated.

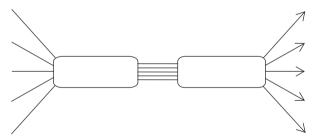


(b) Use the table below to show which output numbers are connected to which input numbers in the above flow diagram.

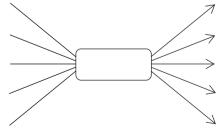
6. The following information is available about the floor space and cost of new houses in a new development. The cost of an empty stand is R180 000.

| Floor space in square metres | 90      | 120     | 150     | 180     | 210       |  |
|------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|--|
| Cost of house and stand      | 540 000 | 660 000 | 780 000 | 900 000 | 1 020 000 |  |

(a) Represent the above information on the flow diagram below.



(b) Show what the houses only will cost, if you get the stand for free.

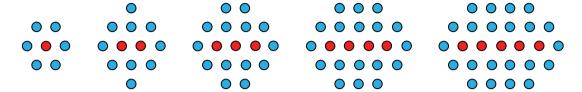


(c) Try to figure out what the cost of a house and stand will be, if there are exactly one hundred 1 m by 1 m sections of floor space in the house.

#### 5.2 Different ways to describe relationships

#### A RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN RED DOTS AND BLUE DOTS

Here is an example of a relationship between two quantities:



In each arrangement there are some red dots and some blue dots.

- 1. How many blue dots are there if there is one red dot?.....
- 2. How many blue dots are there if there are two red dots?.....
- 3. How many blue dots are there if there are three red dots?.....
- 4. How many blue dots are there if there are four red dots?.....
- 5. How many blue dots are there if there are five red dots?.....
- 6. How many blue dots are there if there are six red dots?.....
- 7. How many blue dots are there if there are seven red dots?.....
- 8. How many blue dots are there if there are ten red dots?.....
- 9. How many blue dots are there if there are twenty red dots?.....
- 10. How many blue dots are there if there are one hundred red dots?.....
- 11. Which of the descriptions on the next page correctly describe the relationship between the number of blue dots and the number of red dots in the above arrangements? Test each description thoroughly for all the above arrangements. List them on the dotted line below. Write only the letters, for example (d).

#### Something to think about

Are there different possibilities for the number of blue dots if there are 3 red dots in the arrangement?

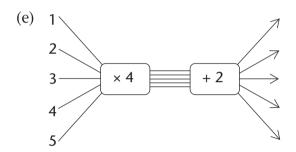
Are there different possibilities for the number of blue dots if there are 2 red dots in the arrangement?

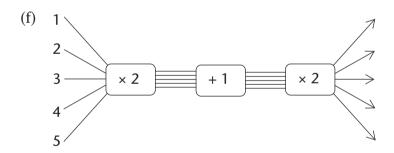
Are there different possibilities for the number of blue dots if there are 20 red dots in the arrangement?

**100** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1

- (a) the number of red dots  $\longrightarrow$   $\times$  4  $\longrightarrow$  the number of blue dots
- (b) to calculate the number of blue dots you multiply the number of red dots by 2, add 1 and multiply the answer by 2
- (c) number of blue dots =  $2 \times$  the number of red dots + 4

| (d) | Number of red dots  | 1 | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  |
|-----|---------------------|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|     | Number of blue dots | 6 | 10 | 14 | 18 | 22 | 26 |





- (g) number of blue dots =  $4 \times$  the number of red dots + 2
- (h) number of blue dots =  $2 \times (2 \times \text{the number of red dots} + 1)$  (Remember that the calculations inside the brackets are done first.)

The descriptions in (c), (g) and (h) above are called **word formulae**.

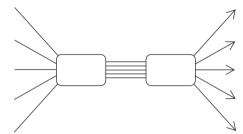
#### TRANSLATING BETWEEN DIFFERENT LANGUAGES OF DESCRIPTION

A relationship between two quantities can be described in different ways, including the following:

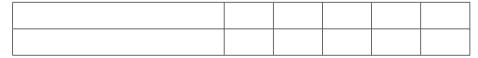
- a table of values of the two quantities
- a flow diagram
- a word formula
- a symbol formula (or symbolic formula)

You will learn about symbolic formulae in section 5.3.

- 1. The relationship between two quantities is described as follows: The second quantity is always 3 times the first quantity plus 8. The first quantity varies between 1 and 5, and it is always a whole number.
  - (a) Describe this relationship with the flow diagram.



(b) Describe the relationship between the two quantities with this table.



(c) Describe the relationship between the two quantities with a word formula.

2. The relationship between two quantities is described as follows:

The input numbers are the first five odd numbers.

value of the one quantity +5  $\times 3$   $\rightarrow$  the corresponding value of the other quantity

(a) Describe this relationship with a table.

(b) Describe the relationship with a word formula.

# 5.3 Algebraic symbols for variables and relationships

### **DESCRIBING PROCEDURES IN DIFFERENT WAYS**

|  | 1. | In | each | case | do | four | things: |
|--|----|----|------|------|----|------|---------|
|--|----|----|------|------|----|------|---------|

- Complete the table.
- Describe the relationship with a word formula.
- Describe the input numbers in words.
- Describe the output numbers in words.
- (a) input number  $-\times 10$  +15 output number

| Input number  | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 |
|---------------|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| Output number |   |    |    |    |    |    |

(b) input number -+15  $\times$  10  $\longrightarrow$  output number

| Input number  | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 |
|---------------|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| Output number |   |    |    |    |    |    |

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

.....

(c) input number  $\longrightarrow$   $\times$  2  $\longrightarrow$  output number

| Input number  | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 |
|---------------|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| Output number |   |    |    |    |    |    |

•••••

•••••

# Formulae with symbols

Instead of writing "input number" and "output number" in formulae, one may just write a single letter symbol as an abbreviation.

Mathematicians have long ago adopted the convention of using the letter symbol *x* as an abbreviation for "input number", and the letter symbol *y* as an abbreviation for "output number".

Other letter symbols than x and y are also used to indicate variable quantities.

The word formula you wrote for question 1(a) can be written more shortly as

$$y = 10 \times x + 15$$

Mathematicians have also long ago agreed that one may leave the x-sign out when writing **symbolic formulae**.

It is not at all wrong to use the multiplication sign in symbolic formulae.

So, instead of  $y = 10 \times x + 15$  we may write y = 10x + 15.

| 2. | Rewrite your word formulae in questions 1(b) and 1(c) as symbolic formulae. |
|----|---|
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••                                     |
| 3. | Write a word formula for each of the following relationships:               |
|    | (a) $y = 7x + 10$   |
|    | (b) $y = 7(x + 10)$   |
|    | (c) $y = 7(2x + 10)$  |
|    |   |

#### WRITING SYMBOLIC FORMULAE

Describe each of the following relationships with a symbolic formula:

1. To calculate the output number, the input number is multiplied by 4 and 7 is

|    | subtracted from the answer.   |
|----|---|
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
| 2. | To calculate the output number, 7 is subtracted from the input number and the answer is multiplied by 5.                            |
|    |   |
| 3. | To calculate the output number, 7 is subtracted from the input number, the answer is multiplied by 5 and 3 is added to this answer. |

**104** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1

# CHAPTER 6 Algebraic expressions 1

An algebraic expression is a description of certain calculations that have to be done in a certain order. In this chapter, you will be introduced to the language of algebra. You will also learn about expressions that appear to be different but that produce the same results when evaluated. When we evaluate an expression, we choose or are given a value of the variable in the expression. Because now we have an actual value, we can carry out the operations  $(+, -, \times, \div)$  in the expression using this value.

| 6.1 | Algebraic language          | 10 | 7 |
|-----|-----------------------------|----|---|
| 6.2 | Add and subtract like terms | 11 | 2 |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 105 2014/07/03 10:53:43 AM

 $\mathcal{X}$ 

J

Z

yxz

Z

y

 $\mathcal{X}$ 

y

 $\mathcal{X}$ 

Z

# 6 Algebraic expressions 1

# 6.1 Algebraic language

### **WORDS, DIAGRAMS AND SYMBOLS**

1. Complete this table.

|     | Words  | Flow diagram     | Expression        |
|-----|--|------------------|-------------------|
|     | Multiply a number by two and add six to the answer.        | —(×2)—(+6)—>     | $2 \times x + 6$  |
| (a) | Add three to a number and then multiply the answer by two. |                  |                   |
| (b) |  | $-\times 5$ $-1$ |                   |
| (c) |  |                  | $7 + 4 \times x$  |
| (d) |  |                  | $10 - 5 \times x$ |

An **algebraic expression** indicates **a sequence of calculations** that can also be described in words or with a flow diagram.

The flow diagram illustrates the **order** in which the calculations must be done.

In algebraic language the **multiplication sign is usually omitted**. So we write 2x instead of  $2 \times x$ . We also write  $x \times 2$  as 2x.

2. Write the following expressions in 'normal' algebraic language:

(a) 
$$-2 \times a + b$$

••••••••••••••••••••••••

#### **LOOKING DIFFERENT BUT YET THE SAME**

1. Complete the table by calculating the numerical values of the expressions for the values of x. Some answers for x = 1 have been done for you as an example.

|     | х              | 1                                 | 3 | 7 | 10 |
|-----|----------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|----|
| (2) | 2x + 3x        | $2 \times 1 + 3 \times 1$         |   |   |    |
| (a) | 2x + 3x        | 2 + 3 = 5                         |   |   |    |
| (b) | 5 <i>x</i>     |                                   |   |   |    |
| (c) | 2x + 3         |                                   |   |   |    |
| (d) | $5x^2$         | $5 \times (1)^2$ $5 \times 1 = 5$ |   |   |    |
| (u) | $\mathcal{J}X$ | $5 \times 1 = 5$                  |   |   |    |

2. Do the expressions 2x + 3x and 5x, in question 1 above, produce different answers or the same answer for:

(a) 
$$x = 3$$
?

(b) 
$$x = 10$$
?

3. Do the expressions 2x + 3 and 5x produce different answers or the same answer for:

(a) 
$$x = 3$$
?

(b) 
$$x = 10$$
?

4. Write down all the algebraic expressions in question 1 that have the same numerical value for the same value(s) of x, although they may look different. Justify your answer.

One of the things we do in algebra is to **evaluate** expressions. When we evaluate an expression we choose or are given a value of the variable in the

expression. Because now we have an actual value we can carry out the operations in the expression using this value, as in the examples given in the table.

Algebraic expressions that have the same numerical value for the same value of *x* but look different are called **equivalent expressions**.

| 5. Say whether the following statements are true or false. Explain your answer in each case. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  | (a) The expressions $2x + 3x$ and $5x$ are equivalent.               |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | ••••••   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | •••••  | •      |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | (b) The expressions $2x + 3$ and $5x$ are equivalent.                |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | ••••••                                       |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6.   | Consider the expressions $3x + 2z + y$ and $6xyz$ .                  | Remember that 6xyz is                        |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | (a) What is the value of $3x + 2z + y$ for $x = 4$ , $y = 7$ and     | the same as $6 \times x \times y \times z$ . |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | z = 10?  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | •••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | •••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | (b) What is the value of $6xyz$ for $x = 4$ , $y = 7$ and $z = 10$ ? |  |  |  |  |  |  |

To show that the two expressions in question 5(a) are equivalent we write 2x + 3x = 5x.

(c) Are the expressions 3x + 2z + y and 6xyz equivalent? Explain.

We can explain why this is so:

$$2x + 3x = (x + x) + (x + x + x) = 5x$$

We say the expression 2x + 3x **simplifies** to 5x.

The term 3x is a product. The number 3 is called the **coefficient** of x.

- 7. In each case below, write down an expression equivalent to the one given.
  - (a) 3x + 3x

(b) 3x + 8x + 2x

•••••

(c) 8b + 2b + 2b

(d) 7m + 2m + 10m

......

(e)  $3x^2 + 3x^2$ 

(f)  $3x^2 + 8x^2 + 2x^2$ 

••••••••••••••••••••••

8. What is the coefficient of  $x^2$  for the expression equivalent to  $3x^2 + 8x^2 + 2x^2$ ?

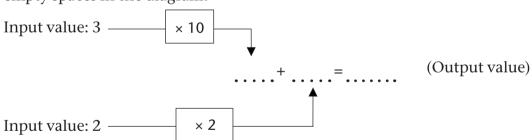
.....

In an expression that can be written as a sum, the different parts of the expression are called the **terms of the expression**. For example, 3x, 2z and y are the terms of the expression 3x + 2z + y.

An expression can have **like terms** or **unlike terms** or both.

**Like terms** are terms that have the **same variable(s) raised to the same power**. The terms 2*x* and 3*x* are examples of like terms.

9. (a) Calculate the numerical value of 10x + 2y for x = 3 and y = 2 by completing the empty spaces in the diagram.



(b) What is the output value for the expression 12xy for x = 3 and y = 2?

.....

(c) Are the expressions 10x + 2y and 12xy equivalent? Explain.

(d) Are the terms 10x and 2y like or unlike terms? Explain.

.....

| 10.(a) |            | results?                 |  |              | algebraic expressions do you the $10x$ C. $10x^2$ |                        |               |                |               | hink will give the same  D. $9x + x$ |             |                 |
|--------|------------|--------------------------|--|--------------|---|------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------|
|        |            | A. 0x + 4                | λ  | Б.           | 10x   |                        | C. 102        | λ              |               | $D, \mathcal{I}X$                    | r X         |                 |
|        |            |                          | algebraic ex   |              |   |                        |               |                |               |                                      |             | x:              |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • •            |  | •            | • • • • •   | • • • • • •            | • • • • • •   | ••             | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          |             | ••              |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • •            |  | •            | • • • • •   | • • • • • •            | • • • • • •   | ••             | • • • • • •   |                                      | • • • • •   | ••              |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • •                                      | •            | • • • • •   | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • •   | ••             | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | ••              |
|        | • • •      | • • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • • •                                    | •            | ••••  | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • •   | ••             | • • • • • • • | • • • • • • •                        | •••••       | ••              |
|        | • • •      | • • • • • • •            |  | •            | • • • • •   | • • • • • •            | • • • • • •   | ••             | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | ••              |
|        | • • • •    |                          | •              | •            | •••••   |                        | •••••         | ••             |               | • • • • • •                          | • • • • •   | ••              |
|        | (c)        | Are the to               | erms 6 <i>x</i> and                                  | d 4 <i>x</i> | like or u   | inlike te              | rms! Ex       | plain          | l <b>.</b>    |                                      |             |                 |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | •              | • • •        | • • • • • •                                       | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • •   | • • • •        | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
|        | (d)        | Are the to               | erms 10 <i>x</i> aı                                  | <br>nd 1     | $0x^2$ like                                       | or unlike              | e terms?      | Expl           | ain.          | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | •              | • • •        | • • • • • • •                                     | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • | • • • •        | • • • • • • • | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • •                                      | • • •        |   | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • •   | • • • •        | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
|        | • • •      | • • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • •                                      | • • • •      | • • • • • •                                       | • • • • • •            | • • • • • •   |                | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
| 11.    | are<br>con | like terms<br>nes before | endrik hav<br>or not. He<br>the y³ whe<br>endrik why | ndri<br>reas | k think<br>in the s                               | s they ar<br>second te | e not, be     | ecaus<br>y³ co | e in the      | first tern                           | n the $x^2$ | $y^{3}\chi^{2}$ |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • •                                      | • • •        | • • • • • •                                       | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • •   | • • • •        | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | •              |              | • • • • • •                                       | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • •   |                | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • |                 |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • • •        |  | • • • •      | • • • • • •                                       | • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • |                | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • |                 |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • •                                      | • • • •      | • • • • • •                                       | • • • • • •            | • • • • • •   | • • • •        | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
|        | • • • •    | • • • • • • • •          | • • • • • • • • •                                    | • • • •      | • • • • • •                                       | • • • • • •            | • • • • • •   |                | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •                          | • • • • • • | • • • •         |
| 12.    | Exp        | olain why                | the terms 5  | sabc         | , 10 <i>acb</i> a                                 | ınd 15 <i>cb</i> ı     | a are like    | e tern         | ns.           |                                      |             |                 |
|        |            |                          |  |              |   |                        |               |                |               |                                      |             |                 |

CHAPTER 6: ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS 1 111

# 6.2 Add and subtract like terms

### **REARRANGE TERMS AND THEN COMBINE LIKE TERMS**

1. Complete the table by evaluating the expressions for the given values of x.

| X                  | 1              | 2 | 10 |
|--------------------|----------------|---|----|
| 30x + 80           | 30 × 1 + 80    |   |    |
| 30x + 60           | =30 + 80 = 110 |   |    |
| 5x + 20            |                |   |    |
| 30x + 80 + 5x + 20 |                |   |    |
| 35x + 100          |                |   |    |
| 135 <i>x</i>       |                |   |    |

| 2. Write down all the expressions in the | he table that are equivalent. |
|--|-------------------------------|
|--|-------------------------------|

| 3. | Tim thinks that the expressions $135x$ and $35x + 100$ are equivalent because for $x = 100$ |
|----|---|
|    | they both have the same numerical value 135.  |

Explain to Tim why the two expressions are not equivalent.

We have already come across the commutative and associative properties of operations. We will now use these properties to help us form equivalent algebraic expressions.

# **Commutative property**

The order in which we add or multiply numbers does not change the answer: a + b = b + a and ab = ba

# **Associative property**

The way in which we group three or more numbers when adding or multiplying does not change the answer: (a + b) + c = a + (b + c) and (ab)c = a(bc)

We can find an equivalent expression by **rearranging** and **combining like terms**, as shown below:

$$30x + 80 + 5x + 20$$
Hence 
$$30x + (80 + 5x) + 20$$
Hence 
$$30x + (5x + 80) + 20$$

$$= (30x + 5x) + (80 + 20)$$

$$= 35x + 100$$

Like terms are combined to form a single term.

The terms 80 and 20 are called **constants**. The numbers 30 and 5 are called **coefficients**.

Brackets are used in the expression on the left to show how the like terms have been rearranged.

The terms 30x and 5x are combined to get the new term 35x, and the terms 80 and 20 are combined to form the new term 100. We say that **the expression** 30x + 80 + 5x + 20 **is simplified** to a new expression 35x + 100.

4. Simplify the following expressions:

(a) 
$$13x + 7 + 6x - 2$$

(b) 
$$21x - 8 + 7x + 15$$

•••••

(c) 18c - 12d + 5c - 7c

(d) 
$$3abc + 4 + 7abc - 6$$

(0) 12 $y^2$  + 2y 2 $y^2$  + 2y

(e)  $12x^2 + 2x - 2x^2 + 8x$ 

(f) 
$$7m^3 + 7m^2 + 9m^3 + 1$$

•••••

•••••

When you are not sure about whether you correctly simplified an expression, it is always advisable to check your work by evaluating the original expression and the simplified expression for some values. This is a very useful habit to have.

When we use a value of the variable in the expression we call that **substitution**.

6. The sum of 5x² + x + 7 and x - 9 is:

A. x² - 2
B. 5x² + 2x + 16
C. 5x² + 16
D. 5x² + 2x - 2

7. The sum of 6x² - x + 4 and x² - 5 is equivalent to:

A. 7x² - x + 9
B. 7x² - x - 1
C. 6x⁴ - x - 9
D. 7x⁴ - x - 1

5. Make a simpler expression that is equivalent to the given expression. Test your answer

In questions 6 to 8 below, write down the letter representing the correct answer. Also

for three different values of x, and redo your work until you get it right.

(a) Simplify (15x + 7y) + (25x + 3 + 2y) (b) Simplify 12mn + 8mn

8. The sum of  $5x^2 + 2x + 4$  and  $3x^2 - 5x - 1$  can be expressed as: A.  $8x^2 + 3x + 3$  B.  $8x^2 + 3x - 3$  C.  $8x^2 - 3x + 3$  D.  $8x^2 - 3x - 3$ 

Combining like terms is a useful algebraic habit. It allows us to replace an expression with another expression that may be convenient to work with.

Do the following questions to get a sense of what we are talking about.

#### **CONVENIENT REPLACEMENTS**

(a) x = 2

explain why you think your answer is correct.

•••••

(b) x = 50

| 2. | Consider the expression $x + x + x + z + z + y$ . What is the value of the expression in each of the following cases?   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|    | (a) $x = 4, y = 7, z = 10$ (b) $x = 0, y = 8, z = 22$   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. | Suppose you have to evaluate $3x + 7x$ for $x = 20$ . Will calculating $10 \times 20$ give the correct answer? Explain.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| te | appose we evaluate the expression $3x + 7x$ for $x = 20$ without first combining the like rms. We will have to do <b>three</b> calculations, namely $3 \times 20$ , then $7 \times 20$ and then find the sum of the two: $3 \times 20 + 7 \times 20 = 60 + 140 = 200$ . |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | But if we first combine the like terms $3x$ and $7x$ into one term $10x$ , we only have to do   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 01 | <b>ne calculation</b> : $10 \times 20 = 200$ . This is one way of thinking about the convenience or refulness of simplifying an algebraic expression.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4. | The expression $5x + 3x$ is given and you are required to evaluate it for $x = 8$ . Will calculating $8 \times 8$ give the correct answer? Explain.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | ••••••  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5. | Suppose you have to evaluate $7x + 5$ for $x = 10$ . Will calculating $12 \times 10$ give the correct answer? Explain.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | •••••   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| 6.       | The expression $5x + 3$ is given and you have to evaluate i Will calculating $8 \times 8$ give the correct answer? Explain.  | t for $x = 8$ .   |
|----------|--|---|
|          |  |   |
| th<br>wo | mantha was asked to evaluate the expression $12x^2 + 2x - 2x$ ought to herself that just substituting the value of $x$ directly ould require a lot of work. She first combined the like term | tly into the terms  |
| :        | $12x^2 - 2x^2 + 2x + 8x$ $= 10x^2 + 10x$ en for $x = 10$ , Samantha found the value of   | The terms $+2x$ and $-2x^2$ change positions by the commutative property of operations. |
|          | $x^2 + 10x$ by calculating   | property of operations.   |
|          | $10 \times 10^2 + 10 \times 10$  |   |
|          | = 1 000 + 100  |   |
| :        | = 1 100  |   |
| Us       | e Samatha's way of thinking for questions 7 to 9.  |   |
| 7.       | What is the value of $12x + 25x + 75x + 8x$ when $x = 6$ ?   |   |
|          | ••••••   |   |
|          | •••••  | •   |
| 8.       | Evaluate $3x^2 + 7 + 2x^2 + 3$ for $x = 5$ .   |   |
|          | •••••  |   |
|          |  |   |
| 9.       | When Zama was asked to evaluate the expression $2n - 1$ down the following: $2n - 1 + 6n = n + 6n = 6n^2$  | +6n for $n = 4$ , she wrote   |
|          | Hence for $n = 4$ : $6 \times (4)^2 = 6 \times 8 = 48$   |   |
|          | Explain where Zama went wrong and why.   |   |
|          |  |   |
|          | ••••••   | •   |
|          |  |   |
|          | •••••  |   |
|          |  |   |

### WORKSHEET

1. Complete the table.

|     | Words   | Flow diagram | Expression |
|-----|---|--------------|------------|
| (a) | Multiply a number by three and add two to the answer. | —(×3)—(+2)→  |            |
| (b) |   |              | 9x - 6     |
| (c) |   | —(×7)—(−3)→  | 7x - 3     |

| 2. | Which of the | following | pairs | consist of | ike term | 15? Exp | plain |
|----|--------------|-----------|-------|------------|----------|---------|-------|
|----|--------------|-----------|-------|------------|----------|---------|-------|

A. 
$$3y; -7y$$

B. 
$$14e^2$$
;  $5e^2$ 

A. 
$$3y$$
,  $-7y$  B.  $14e^2$ ;  $5e$  C.  $3y^2z$ ;  $17y^2z$  D.  $-bcd$ ;  $5bd$ 

3. Write the following in the 'normal' algebraic way:

(a) 
$$c2 + d3$$

(b) 
$$7 \times d \times e \times f$$

4. Consider the expression  $12x^2 - 5x + 3$ .

- (a) What is the number 12 called?.....
- (b) Write down the coefficient of x.
- (c) What name is given to the number 3?
- 5. Explain why the terms 5pqr and -10prq and 15qrp are like terms.

6. If y = 7, what is the value of each of the following?

(a) 
$$y + 8$$

(c) 
$$7 - y$$

# WORKSHEET

| 7. | Simplify the following expressions:<br>(a) $18c + 12d + 5c - 7c$                      | (b) 3def + 4 + 7def - 6             |
|----|---|-------------------------------------|
| 8. | Evaluate the following expressions for y (a) $2y^2 + 3z$                              | y = 3, z = -1:<br>(b) $(2y)^2 + 3z$ |
|    | •••••   | •••••                               |
| 9. | Write each algebraic expression in the $\epsilon$ (a) $5y + 15y$                      | implest form.<br>(b) 5c+6c-3c+2c    |
|    | (c) 4b+3+16b-5  | (d) 7m+3n+2-6m                      |
|    | (e) $5h^2 + 17 - 2h^2 + 3$  | (f) $7e^2f + 3ef + 2 + 4ef$         |
| 10 | ). Evaluate the following expressions:<br>(a) $3y + 3y + 3y + 3y + 3y + 3y$ for $y =$ | 18                                  |
|    | (b) $13y + 14 - 3y + 6$ for $y = 200$   |                                     |
|    | (c) $20 - y^2 + 101y^2 + 80$ for $y = 1$  | ••••••••••••                        |
|    | (d) $12y^2 + 3yz + 18y^2 + 2yz$ for $y = 3z$  | and $z=2$                           |
|    | •••••   |                                     |

ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS 1

# CHAPTER 7 Algebraic equations 1

In this chapter you will learn to find numbers that make certain statements true. A statement about an unknown number is called an equation. When we work to find out which number will make the equation true, we say we solve the equation. The number that makes the equation true is called the solution of the equation.

| 7.1 | Setting up equations            | 121 |
|-----|---------------------------------|-----|
| 7.2 | Solving equations by inspection | 123 |
| 7.3 | More examples                   | 124 |

| 4  | 71 | 53  | 8  | 98 | 78 | 54 |
|----|----|-----|----|----|----|----|
| 46 | 9  | 6   | 2  | 60 | 81 | 62 |
| 70 | 6  | 8   | 33 | 2  | 40 | 64 |
| 27 | 70 | 31  | 63 | 59 | 71 | 62 |
| 42 | 85 | 32  | 85 | 81 | 51 | 73 |
| 70 | 64 | 33  | 96 | 32 | 23 | 69 |
| 82 | 9  | 59  | 54 | 96 | 43 | 29 |
| 63 | 71 | 86  | 81 | 6  | 29 | 56 |
| 74 | 21 | 17  | 94 | 6  | 33 | 56 |
| 18 | 63 | 73  | 76 | 91 | 32 | 39 |
| 3  | 87 | 23  | 94 | 84 | 75 | 69 |
| 36 | 49 | 90  | 73 | 62 | 70 | 22 |
| 10 | 91 | 40  | 92 | 68 | 87 | 57 |
| 62 | 76 | 72  | 79 | 68 | 25 | 8  |
| 9  | 72 | 31  | 37 | 37 | 46 | 49 |
| 48 | 58 | 64  | 92 | 34 | 83 | 95 |
| 18 | 50 | 88  | 51 | 92 | 89 | 10 |
| 49 | 49 | 100 | 60 | 60 | 75 | 40 |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 120 2014/07/03 10:53:45 AM

# 7 Algebraic equations 1

# 7.1 Setting up equations

An **equation** is a mathematical sentence that is true for some numbers but false for other numbers. The following are examples of equations:

$$x + 3 = 11$$
 and  $2^x = 8$ 

x + 3 = 11 is true if x = 8, but false if x = 3.

When we look for a number or numbers that make an equation true we say that we are **solving the equation**. For example, x = 4 is the **solution** of 2x = 8 because it makes 2x = 8 true. (Check:  $2 \times 4 = 8$ )

#### **LOOKING FOR NUMBERS TO MAKE STATEMENTS TRUE**

| 1  | Arothofoll  | owing statements | true or folco? | Justify your answer.  |
|----|-------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| Ι. | Are the fon | OWING Statements | tiue of faise: | tustiiv vout atiswet. |

(a) 
$$x - 3 = 0$$
, if  $x = -3$ 

(b) 
$$x^3 = 8$$
, if  $x = -2$ 

(c) 
$$3x = -6$$
, if  $x = -3$ 

(d) 
$$3x = 1$$
, if  $x = 1$ 

(e) 
$$6x + 5 = 47$$
, if  $x = 7$ 

2. Find the original number. Show your reasoning.

(a) A number multiplied by 10 is 80.

(b) Add 83 to a number and the answer is 100.

(c) Divide a number by 5 and the answer is 4.

......

|    | (d) Multiply a number by 4 and the answer is 20.   |
|----|--|
|    | (e) Twice a number is 100.   |
|    | (f) A number raised to the power 5 is 32.  |
|    | (g) A number raised to the power 4 is –81.   |
|    | (h) Fifteen times a number is 90.  |
|    | (i) 93 added to a number is −3.  |
|    | (j) Half a number is 15.   |
|    | ••••••   |
| 3. | Write the equations below in words using "a number" in place of the letter symbol <i>x</i> . Then write what you think "the number" is in each case. |
|    | Example: $4 + x = 23$ . Four plus a number equals twenty-three. The number is 19.  |
|    | (a) $8x = 72$  |
|    | (b) $\frac{2x}{5} = 2$   |
|    | (c) $2x + 5 = 21$  |
|    | (d) $12 + 9x = 30$   |
|    | (e) $30 - 2x = 40$   |
|    | (f) $5x + 4 = 3x + 10$   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |

# 7.2 Solving equations by inspection

#### THE ANSWER IS IN PLAIN SIGHT

1. Seven equations are given below the table. Use the table to find out for which of the given values of *x* it will be true that the left-hand side of the equation is equal to the right-hand side.

You can read the solutions of an equation from a table.

| Х               | -3  | -2  | -1  | 0  | 1 | 2  | 3  | 4  |
|-----------------|-----|-----|-----|----|---|----|----|----|
| 2x + 3          | -3  | -1  | 1   | 3  | 5 | 7  | 9  | 11 |
| <i>x</i> + 4    | 1   | 2   | 3   | 4  | 5 | 6  | 7  | 8  |
| 9 – <i>x</i>    | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9  | 8 | 7  | 6  | 5  |
| 3x-2            | -11 | -8  | -5  | -2 | 1 | 4  | 7  | 10 |
| 10x - 7         | -37 | -27 | -17 | -7 | 3 | 13 | 23 | 33 |
| 5x + 3          | -12 | -7  | -2  | 3  | 8 | 13 | 18 | 23 |
| 10 – 3 <i>x</i> | 19  | 16  | 13  | 10 | 7 | 4  | 1  | -2 |

(a) 
$$2x + 3 = 5x + 3$$

(b) 
$$5x + 3 = 9 - x$$

•••••

(c) 
$$2x + 3 = x + 4$$

(d) 
$$10x - 7 = 5x + 3$$

(e) 3x - 2 = x + 4

(f) 
$$9 - x = 2x + 3$$

(~) 10 2... 2... 0

••••••

(g) 10 - 3x = 3x - 2

Two or more equations can have the same solution. For example, 5x = 10 and x + 2 = 4 have the same solution; x = 2 is the solution for both equations.

Two equations are called **equivalent** if they have the same solution.

2. Which of the equations in question 1 have the same solutions? Explain.

3. Complete the table below.
Then answer the questions that follow.

You can also do a search by narrowing down the possible solution to an equation.

| Х       | 0 | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 |
|---------|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 2x + 3  |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 3x - 10 |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |

- (a) Can you find a solution for 2x + 3 = 3x 10 in the table?
- (b) What happens to the values of 2x + 3 and 3x 10 as x increases? Do they become bigger or smaller?

(c) Is there a point where the value of 3x - 10 becomes bigger or smaller than the value of 2x + 3 as the value of x increases? If so, between which x-values does this happen?

This point where the two expressions are equal is called the **break-even point.** 

(d) Now that you narrowed down where the possible solution can be, try other possible values for x until you find out for what value of x the statement 2x + 3 = 3x - 10 is true.

"Searching" for the solution of an equation by using tables or by narrowing down to the possible solution is called **solution by inspection**.

7.3 More examples

## LOOKING FOR AND CHECKING SOLUTIONS

1. What is the solution for the equations below?

(a) 
$$x - 3 = 4$$

(b) 
$$x + 2 = 9$$

(c) 
$$3x = 21$$

(d) 
$$3x + 1 = 22$$

••••••

When a certain number is the solution of an equation we say that the number **satisfies** the equation. For example, x = 4 satisfies the equation 3x = 12 because  $3 \times 4 = 12$ .

| 2          | Chasse the number in | bearly ata that | t antiaf on the an  | tion Ex     |            | um ala ai aa |
|------------|----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| <i>Z</i> . | Choose the number in | Diackets that   | i satisiies tiie et | juation, ex | piaiii you | ii choice.   |

(a) 
$$12x = 84$$

(b) 
$$\frac{84}{x} = 12$$

(c) 
$$48 = 8k + 8$$

$$\{-5; 0; 5; 10\}$$

(d) 
$$19 - 8m = 3$$

$$\{-2; -1; 0; 1; 2\}$$

(e) 
$$20 = 6y - 4$$

(f) 
$$x^3 = -64$$

$$\{-8; -4; 4; 8\}$$

(g) 
$$5^x = 125$$

$$\{-3; -1; 1; 3\}$$

(h) 
$$2^x = 8$$

(i) 
$$x^2 = 9$$

3. What makes the following equations true? Check your answers.

(a) 
$$m + 8 = 100$$

(b) 
$$80 = x + 60$$

(c) 26 - k = 0

(d) 
$$105 \times y = 0$$

|    | (e) $k \times 10 = 10$                   | (f) $5x = 100$                          |
|----|--|---|
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |   |
|    | •••••                                    | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •       |
|    | $(g)  \frac{15}{t} = 5$                  | (h) $3 = \frac{t}{5}$                   |
|    |  | •••••                                   |
|    | •  | • |
| 4. | Solve the equations below by inspection. | Check your answers.                     |
|    | (a) $12x + 14 = 50$                      | (b) $100 = 15m + 25$                    |
|    | •••••                                    | •••••                                   |
|    | ••••••                                   | •••••                                   |
|    |  | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •         |
|    | (c) $\frac{100}{x} = 20$                 | (d) $7m + 5 = 40$                       |
|    | •••••                                    | •••••                                   |
|    |  |   |

(e) 2x + 8 = 10

(g) -1 + 2x = -11

(i) 100 = 64 + 9x

# TERM 1 Revision and assessment

| Revision                       | 128 |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Whole numbers                  | 128 |
| • Integers                     | 130 |
| • Exponents                    | 132 |
| Numeric and geometric patterns |     |
| • Functions and relationships  | 136 |
| Algebraic expressions 1        | 137 |
| Algebraic equations 1          | 138 |
| Assessment                     |     |

# Revision

Show all your steps of working.

| V  | MOLE NOWIDERS  |
|----|--|
| 1. | (a) Write both 300 and 160 as products of prime factors.   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (b) Determine the HCF and LCM of 300 and 160.  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
| 2. | Tommy, Thami and Timmy are given birthday money by their grandmother in the ratio of their ages. They are turning 11, 13 and 16 years old, respectively. If the total amount of money given to all three boys is R1 000, how much money does Thami get on his birthday?  |
|    | ••••••   |
|    | •••••  |
| 3. | Tshepo and his family are driving to the coast on holiday. The distance is 1 200 km and they must reach their destination in 12 hours. After 5 hours, they have travelled 575 km. Then one of their tyres bursts. It takes 45 minutes to get the spare wheel on, before they can drive again. At what average speed must they drive the remainder of the journey to reach their destination on time? |
|    |  |
|    |  |
|    | ••••••   |
| 4. | The number of teachers at a school has increased in the ratio 5: 6. If there used to be 25 teachers at the school, how many teachers are there now?  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |

**128** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 1

| 5. | ABC for Life needs to have their annual statements audited. They are quoted R8 500 + 14% VAT by Audits Inc. How much will ABC for Life have to pay Audits Inc. in total?  |
|----|---|
|    | •••••   |
|    | ••••••  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
| 6. | Reshmi invests R35 000 for three years at an interest rate of 8,2% per annum. Determine how much money will be in her account at the end of the investment period.  |
|    | •••••   |
|    | ••••••  |
|    | •••••   |
|    | •••••   |
|    | ••••••  |
| 7. | Lesebo wants to buy a lounge suite that costs R7 999 cash. He does not have enough money and so decides to buy it on hire purchase. The store requires a 15% deposit up front, and 18 monthly instalments of R445.  (a) Calculate the deposit that Lesebo must pay. |
|    | •••••   |
|    | ••••••  |
|    | •••••   |
|    | •••••   |
|    | (b) How much extra does Lesebo pay because he buys the lounge suite on hire purchase, rather than in cash?  |
|    | •••••   |
|    |   |
|    |   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |

TERM 1: REVISION AND ASSESSMENT 129

8. Consider the following exchange rates table:

| South African Rand    | 1.00 ZAR | inv. 1.00 ZAR |
|-----------------------|----------|---------------|
| Euro                  | 0.075370 | 13.267807     |
| US Dollar             | 0.098243 | 10.178807     |
| British Pound         | 0.064602 | 15.479409     |
| Indian Rupee          | 5.558584 | 0.179902      |
| Australian Dollar     | 0.102281 | 9.776984      |
| Canadian Dollar       | 0.101583 | 9.844200      |
| Emirati Dirham        | 0.360838 | 2.771327      |
| Swiss Franc           | 0.093651 | 10.677960     |
| Chinese Yuan Renminbi | 0.603065 | 1.658195      |
| Malaysian Ringgit     | 0.303523 | 3.294646      |

| (a) | Write down the amount in rand that needs to be exchanged to get 1 Swiss franc |
|-----|---|
|     | Give your answer to the nearest cent.   |

| (b) | Write down the only currency for which an exchange of R100 will give you |
|-----|--|
|     | more than 100 units of that currency.                                    |

| <br>  |
|---|
| <br>Ntsako is travelling to Dubai and converts R10 000 into Emirati dirhams. How many dirhams does Ntsako receive (assume no commission)? |
|   |

#### **INTEGERS**

Don't use a calculator for any of the questions in this section.

1. Write a number in each box to make the calculations correct.

(a) 
$$= -11$$

(b) 
$$-$$
 = -11

2. Fill <, > or = into each block to show the relationships.

(c) 
$$4-3$$
  $3-4$ 

(d) 
$$5-7$$
  $-(7-5)$ 

(e) 
$$-9 \times 2$$
  $-9 \times -2$ 

(f) 
$$-4 \times 5$$
  $4 \times -5$ 

(g) 
$$-10 \div 5$$
  $-10 \div -2$ 

(h) 
$$-15 \times -15$$
 224

3. Follow the pattern to complete the number sequences.

4. Look at the number lines. In each case, the missing number is halfway between the other two numbers. Fill in the correct values in the boxes.

5. Calculate the following:

(a) 
$$-5-7$$

(b) 
$$7 - 10$$

.....

be positive and the other negative.)

•••••

(c) 
$$8 - (-9)$$

(d) 
$$(-5)(-2)(-4)$$

(e)  $5 + 4 \times -2$ 

(f) 
$$\frac{(\sqrt{4})(-2)^2}{-4}$$

(g)  $\frac{-(-3)^3\sqrt[3]{125}}{(-9)(3)}$ 

(h) 
$$\frac{\sqrt[3]{-64}}{-3-1}$$

6. (a) Write down two numbers that multiply to give –15. (One of the numbers must

.....

(b) Write down two numbers that add to 15. One of the numbers must be positive and the other negative.

•••••

| 7. | many degre   | ne temperature in Kimberley was –3 ° es had the temperature risen? |  |
|----|--|--|--|
|    | •                          |  | ••••••   |
|    | • • • • • • • • • •  |  | •••••  |
| 8. |  | e is 220 m below the surface of the sourface is it now?            | ea. It travels 75 m upwards. How far                         |
|    | •                          |  |  |
|    | • • • • • • • • •  |  |  |
|    |  |  |  |
| E  | <b>XPONENTS</b>  |  |  |
| Yo | u should not   | t use a calculator for any of the quest                            | ions in this section.  |
| 1. | Write down   | the value of the following:  |  |
|    | (a) $(-3)^3$<br>(b) $-5^2$<br>(c) $(-1)^{200}$<br>(d) $(10^2)^2$ | ••••••   |  |
| 2. | Write the fo   | ollowing numbers in scientific notati                              | on:  |
|    | (a) 200 000  | (b) 12   | 2,345  |
|    | •                          |  |  |
| 3. | Write the fo   | ollowing numbers in ordinary notati                                | on:  |
|    | (a) $1,3 \times 10$  | (b) 7,0  | $01 \times 10^7$   |
|    | • • • • • • • • •  | •                            | •                      |
| 4. | Which of th  | ne following numbers is bigger: 5,23                               | $\times$ 10 <sup>10</sup> or 2,9 $\times$ 10 <sup>11</sup> ? |
|    | • • • • • • • • • •  |  |  |
|    | • • • • • • • • • •  |  |  |
|    |  |  |  |

| 5. | Sim   | plify the f                          | ollowing:   |   |   |       |
|----|-------|--------------------------------------|---|---|---|-------|
|    | (a)   | $2^7 \times 2^3$                     | •                           | • • • • • • • • • • • • •               |   |       |
|    |       |                                      | •                           |   |   |       |
|    |       |                                      | $4y^3$ )  |   |   |       |
|    |       |                                      |   |   |   |       |
|    |       |                                      | (z <sup>-5</sup> )  |   |   |       |
|    |       |                                      | $(-4abc^2)^2$   |   |   |       |
|    | (g)   | $\frac{(2xy^2z^3)(-20xy^8)}{20xy^8}$ | $\frac{5y^2z)^2}{z^4}$  |   |   |       |
| 6. | Wri   | ite down tl                          | he values of each of the foll                                     | owing:                                  | • | • • • |
|    |       | $(0,6)^2$                            |   | -                                       |   |       |
|    |       |                                      |   | _                                       |   |       |
|    |       |                                      |   |   | •••••                                   |       |
|    | (e)   | $4\sqrt{\frac{9}{64}}$               | •••••   | (f) $\sqrt[3]{0,001}$                   | •••••                                   |       |
| N  |       | FRIC AND                             | CEOMETRIC DATTERN   | 16                                      |   |       |
| N  | UMI   | ERIC ANL                             | GEOMETRIC PATTERN   | 13                                      |   |       |
| 1. | terr  |                                      | e following sequences, writ<br>following term in words. Tl<br>ce. |   | *                                       |       |
|    | (a)   | 12; 7; 2;                            |   |   |   |       |
|    |       |                                      | •                           |   |   |       |
|    | (b)   |                                      | 8; ; ;  |   |   |       |
|    |       |                                      | •                           |   |   |       |
|    | (c)   | 100; -50;                            | 25; ; ;   |   |   |       |
|    |       |                                      | •                           |   | • |       |
|    | (d)   | 3; 4; 7; 11                          | ;;;   |   |   |       |
|    | • • • | • • • • • • • •                      | •                           | • |   |       |
|    | • • • |                                      | •                           | • • • • • • • • • • • •                 |   |       |
|    |       |                                      |   |   |   |       |

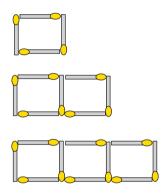
| 2. | In this question, you are given the rule by which each term of the sequence can be found. In all cases, $n$ is the position of the term. Determine the first three terms of each of the sequences. ( <i>Hint</i> : Substitute $n = 1$ to find the value of the first term.) |
|----|---|
|    | (a) $n \times 4$  |
|    | (b) $n \times 5 - 12$   |
|    | (c) $2 \times n^2$  |
|    | (d) $3n \div 3 \times -2$   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
| 3. | Write down the rule by which each term of the sequence can be found (in a similar format to those given in question 2, where $n$ is the position of the term).  |
|    | (a) 2; 4; 6;  |
|    | (b) -7; -3; 1;  |
|    | (c) 2; 4; 8;  |
|    | (d) 9; 16; 23;  |
|    | ••••••  |
| 4. | Use the rules you have found in question 3 to find the value of the 20th term of the sequences in questions 3(a) and 3(b).  |
|    | (a)   |
|    | (b)   |
|    |   |

5. Find the relationship between the position of the term in the sequence and the value of the term, and use it to fill in the missing values in the tables.

| (a) | Position in       | 1  | 2   | 3   | 4 | 25 |
|-----|-------------------|----|-----|-----|---|----|
|     | sequence          |    |     |     |   |    |
|     | Value of the term | -8 | -11 | -14 |   |    |

| (b) | Position in       | 1 | 2 | 3 |     |        |
|-----|-------------------|---|---|---|-----|--------|
|     | sequence          |   |   |   |     |        |
|     | Value of the term | 1 | 3 | 9 | 243 | 19 683 |

6. The image below shows a series of patterns created by matches.



| (a) | Write in words the rule that describes the number of matches needed for |
|-----|---|
|     | each new pattern.   |

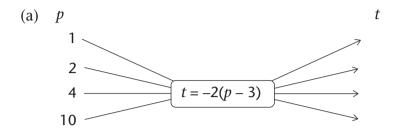
(b) Use the rule to determine the missing values in the table below, and fill them in.

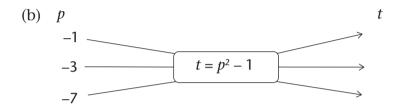
| Number of the pattern    | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 20 |     |
|--------------------------|---|---|---|---|----|-----|
| Number of matches needed | 4 | 7 |   |   |    | 151 |

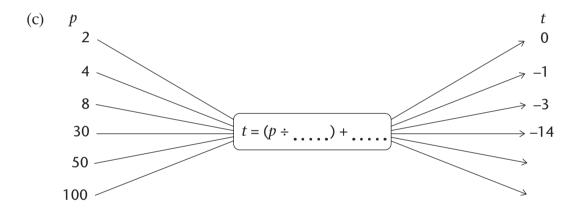
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

## **FUNCTIONS AND RELATIONSHIPS**

1. Fill in the missing input values, output values or rule in these flow diagrams. Note that *p* and *t* are integers.







2. Consider the values in the following table. The rule for finding y is: divide x by -2 and subtract 4. Use the rule to determine the missing values in the table, and write them in.

| х |    | -2 | 0  | 2 | 5 |    |
|---|----|----|----|---|---|----|
| у | -1 | -3 | -4 |   |   | 48 |

3. Consider the values in the following table:

| X | -2 | -1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 15 |    |
|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| у | 1  | 3  | 5 | 7 | 9 |   |    | 61 |

| (a) | write in words the rule for finding the y-values in the table. |  |
|-----|--|--|
|     |  |  |

| (b) | Use the rule to determine the missing values in the table, and write them in. |
|-----|---|
| ` / | ,   |
|     |   |
|     |   |

# **ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS 1**

- 1. Look at this algebraic expression:  $5x^3 9 + 4x 3x^2$ .
  - (a) How many terms does this expression have?
  - (b) What is the variable in this expression?
  - (c) What is the coefficient of the  $x^2$  term?
  - (d) What is the constant in this expression?
  - (e) Rewrite the expression so that the terms are in order of decreasing powers of *x*.
  - •••••
- 2. In this question, x = 6 and y = 17. Complete the rules to show different ways to determine y if x is known. The first way is done for you:
  - Way 1: Multiply x by 2 and add 5. This can be written as y = 2x + 5
  - (a) Way 2: Multiply x by ....... and then subtract ....... This can be written as
  - •••••

  - (c) Way 4: Add ..... to x, and then multiply by ...... This can be written as

TERM 1: REVISION AND ASSESSMENT 137

| 3. | Simplify:  |
|----|--|
|    | (a) $2x^2 + 3x^2$  |
|    | (b) $9xy - 12yx$   |
|    | (c) $3y^2 - 4y + 3y - 2y^2$  |
|    | (d) $9m^3 + 9m^2 + 9m^3 - 3$   |
| 4. | Calculate the value of the following expressions if $a = -2$ ; $b = 3$ ; $c = -1$ and $d = 0$ :  (a) $abc$   |
|    | (b) -a <sup>2</sup>  |
|    | (c) (abc) <sup>d</sup>   |
|    | (d) $a + b - 2c$   |
|    | (e) $(a+b)^{10}$   |
|    | ••••••   |
| A  | LGEBRAIC EQUATIONS 1   |
| 1. | Write equations that represent the given information:  (a) Nandi is <i>x</i> years old. Shaba, who is <i>y</i> years old, is three years older than Nandi. |
|    | (b) The temperature at Colesberg during the day was <i>x</i> °C. But at night, the temperature dropped by 15 degrees to reach −2 °C.                       |
|    | ••••••   |
| 2. | Solve the following equations for $x$ :<br>(a) $x + 5 = 2$ (b) $7 - x = 9$   |
|    | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·  |
|    |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |

|    | (c) $3x - 1 = -10$                                  | (d) $2x^3 = -16$                        |
|----|---|---|
|    |   |   |
|    | (e) $2^x = 16$                                      | (f) $2(3)^x = 6$                        |
|    | ••••••  | ••••••                                  |
|    | •••••   | ••••••••••                              |
| 3. | If $3n - 1 = 11$ , what is the value of $4n$ ?      |   |
|    |   |   |
|    | •••••   |   |
|    | •••••   |   |
| 4. | If $c = a + b$ and $a + b + c = 16$ , determine th  | e value of <i>c</i> .                   |
|    | •••••   | • |
|    | •••••   | •••••                                   |
|    | •••••   | •••••                                   |
| 5. | (a) If $2a + 3 = b$ , write down values for $a = b$ | •                                       |
|    | (b) Write down a <i>different</i> pair of values t  | o make the equation true.               |

### **Assessment**

In this section, the numbers in brackets at the end of a question indicate the number of marks the question is worth. Use this information to help you determine how much working is needed. The total number of marks allocated to the assessment is 60.

| 1. | The profits of GetRich Inc. have decreased in the ratio 5:3 due to the recession in the country. If their profits used to be R1 250 000, how much are their profits now?                       | (2)      |
|----|--|----------|
|    |  | • • •    |
|    |  | • • •    |
| 2. | Which car has the better rate of petrol consumption: Ashley's car, which drove 520 km on 32 $\ell$ of petrol, or Zaza's car, which drove 880 km on 55 $\ell$ of petrol? Show all your working. | (3)      |
|    |  | • • •    |
|    |  |          |
|    |  | • • •    |
| 3. | Hanyani took out a R25 000 loan from a lender that charges him 22% interest each year. How much will he owe in one year's time?  | h<br>(3) |
|    |  | • • •    |
|    |  |          |

4. Consider the following exchange rates table:

| South African Rand    | 1.00 ZAR | inv. 1.00 ZAR |
|-----------------------|----------|---------------|
| Indian Rupee          | 5.558584 | 0.179902      |
| Australian Dollar     | 0.102281 | 9.776984      |
| Canadian Dollar       | 0.101583 | 9.844200      |
| Emirati Dirham        | 0.360838 | 2.771327      |
| Chinese Yuan Renminbi | 0.603065 | 1.658195      |
| Malaysian Ringgit     | 0.303523 | 3.294646      |

|    | Chen returns from a business trip to Malaysia with 2 500 ringgit in his wallet. If he changes this money into rand in South Africa, how much will he receive? | (2)   |
|----|---|-------|
|    | •••••   | • • • |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
| 5. | Fill <, > or = into the block to show the relationship between the number expressions:  |       |
|    | (a) $6-4$ $4-6$   | (1)   |
|    | (b) $2 \times -3$ $-3^2$  | (1)   |
| 6. | Look at the number sequence below. Fill in the next term into the block.  |       |
|    | -5; 10; -20;  | (1)   |
| 7. | Calculate the following:  |       |
|    | (a) $(-4)^2 - 20$   | (2)   |
|    | (b) $\sqrt[3]{-8} + 14 \div 2$  | (2)   |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
| 8. | Julius Caesar was a Roman emperor who lived from 100 BC to 44 BC. How old was he when he died?  | (2)   |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
| 9. | (a) Write down two numbers that divide to give an answer of –8. One of the numbers must be positive, and the other negative.                                  | (1)   |
|    | <ul><li>(b) Write down two numbers that subtract to give an answer of 8. One of the numbers must be positive and the other negative.</li></ul>                | (1)   |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
| 10 | . Write the following number in scientific notation: 17 million.  | (2)   |
|    |   |       |

| 11. Which of the following numbers is bigger: $3,47 \times 10^{21}$ or $7,99 \times 10^{20}$ ? | (1)     |
|--|---------|
| •••••  | • • • • |
| •••••  | • • • • |
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  | • • • • |
| 12. Simplify the following, leaving all answers with positive exponents:                       |         |
| (a) $3^7 \times 3^{-2}$  | (1)     |
| (b) $(-12y^8) \div (-3y^2)$  | (2)     |
| (c) $\frac{(3xy^2z^3)(-yz)^2}{15x^5y^4z^7}$  | (4)     |
| 13. Write down the values of each of the following:  |         |
| (a) $(0,3)^3$  | (1)     |
| (b) $8\sqrt{\frac{25}{16}}$  | (2)     |
| 14. Consider the following number sequence: 2; –8; 32;   |         |
| (a) Write in words the rule by which each term of the sequence can be found.                   | (1)     |
| (b) Write the next three terms in this sequence.   | (2)     |
| ••••••   | • • • • |
| 15. The picture below shows a series of patterns created by matches.                           |         |
|  |         |

(a) Write a formula for the rule that describes the relationship between the number of matches and the position of the term in the sequence (pattern number). Let n

be the position of the term.

(2)

| b) Use the rule to determine the values of $a$ to $c$ in the following table: |   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   | (3)   |  |   |
|---|---|--|---|--|---|--|--|---|---|--|---|
| Number of the pattern   |   |  |   | 1  | 2   | 3  | 4  |   | 15  |  | С   |
| Numbe   | er of ma  | tches ne   | eeded   | 8  | 15  | 22   | а  |   | b   |  | 148   |
|   |   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   |   |  |   |
| • • • • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
| • • • • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
|   | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • •   |  | • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
| nsider the  | e values  | in the f   | ollowin   | g table:   |   |  |  |   |   |  |   |
|   | Ι   |  | Ι   |  | 2.  |  | 5  |   | 12  |  |   |
|   |   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   | 12  |  | 98  |
| ,   |   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   |   |  |   |
| Write in  | words   | the rule   | for find  | ing the  | <i>y</i> -value   | s in t   | he tabl  | e.  |   |  | (2)   |
| • • • • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   |  | • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
| TT 41   |   | 1  |   |  |   |  |  |   | • • • • • •   | · · · · ·  | (2)   |
| Use the   | rule to (   | determi  | ne the n  | nissing v  | alues i   | n the  | e table, a   | and f   | ill them  | ı in.  | (3)   |
| • • • • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
|   | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   |  | • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
|   | • • • • • •   |  |   | • • • • •  |   |  | • • • • •  |   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
| nlify.  |   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   |   |  |   |
|   | 2   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   |   |  | (1)   |
|   |   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   |   |  |   |
|   |   |  |   |  |   |  |  |   |   |  |   |
| ermine t  | he value  | e of $2a^2$  | – 10 if <i>a</i>  | =-2.   |   |  |  |   |   |  | (2)   |
|   | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • • •   | • • • • • •  | • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
|   | • • • • • •   |  |   | • • • • • •  |   |  | • • • • • •  | • • • •   | • • • • • •   | • • • •  | • • • • •   |
|   | Number N | Number of the Number of mathematical Number of | Number of the pattern Number of matches not sider the values in the factor of the value of the value of $\frac{x}{y} - \frac{-2}{-4}$ .  Use the rule to determine the value of $2a^2 + 4y - 7y^2$ .  The value of $2a^2 + 4y - 7y^2$ . | Number of the pattern  Number of matches needed  nsider the values in the followin $ \begin{array}{c cccc} x & -2 & -1 & 0 \\ y & -7 & -4 & -1 \end{array} $ Write in words the rule for find  Use the rule to determine the number of the rule for find | Number of the pattern 1  Number of matches needed 8  nsider the values in the following table: $ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | Number of the pattern 1 2 Number of matches needed 8 15  Insider the values in the following table: $ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | Number of the pattern 1 2 3  Number of matches needed 8 15 22  Insider the values in the following table: $ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | Number of the pattern $1$ $2$ $3$ $4$ Number of matches needed $8$ $15$ $22$ $a$ and the special points of matches needed $8$ $15$ $22$ $a$ and the special points of matches needed $8$ $15$ $22$ $a$ and the special points of matches needed $8$ $15$ $22$ $a$ and the special points of matches needed $8$ $15$ $22$ $a$ and the special points of matches needed $8$ $15$ $22$ $a$ and the special points of $a$ | Number of the pattern 1 2 3 4 Number of matches needed 8 15 22 $a$ sinsider the values in the following table: $ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | Number of the pattern 1 2 3 4 15  Number of matches needed 8 15 22 $a$ $b$ This insider the values in the following table: | Number of the pattern 1 2 3 4 15 Number of matches needed 8 15 22 $a$ $b$ |

19. If c + 2d = 27, give the value of the following:

(a) 2c + 4d (1)

(b)  $\frac{c + 2d}{-9}$  (1)

(c)  $\sqrt[3]{c + 2d}$  (1)

20. Solve the following for x:

(a) -x = -11 (b) 2x - 5 = -11 (c)  $4x^3 = 32$ 

# CHAPTER 8 Algebraic expressions 2

In this chapter, you will learn about simplifying algebraic expressions by expanding them. Expanding an algebraic expression allows you to change the form of an expression without changing the output values it gives.

Rewriting an expression in a different form can be useful for simplifying calculations and comparing expressions. We use two main tools to simplify expressions: we combine like terms and/or use the distributive property.

| 8.1 | Expanding algebraic expressions         | . 147 |
|-----|---|-------|
| 8.2 | Simplifying algebraic expressions       | . 152 |
| 8.3 | Simplifying quotient expressions        | . 155 |
| 8.4 | Squares, cubes and roots of expressions | .160  |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 145

2014/07/03 10:53:52 AM

$$5 \times 9^{2} + 4 \times 9 - 3$$
  
 $5 \times 8^{2} + 4 \times 8 - 3$   
 $5 \times 12^{2} + 4 \times 12 - 3$   
 $5 \times 20^{2} + 4 \times 20 - 3$   
 $5 \times 2^{2} + 4 \times 2 - 3$   
 $5 \times x^{2} + 4 \times x - 3$ 

$$5x^2 + 4x - 3$$

$$5 \times 7^2 + 4 \times 7 - 3$$
  
 $5 \times 25^2 + 4 \times 25 - 3$ 

# 8 Algebraic expressions 2

## 8.1 Expanding algebraic expressions

#### **MULTIPLY OFTEN OR MULTIPLY ONCE: IT IS YOUR CHOICE**

- 1. (a) Calculate  $5 \times 13$  and  $5 \times 87$  and add the two answers.
  - (b) Add 13 and 87, and then multiply the answer by 5.
  - (c) If you do not get the same answer for questions 1(a) and 1(b), you have made a mistake. Redo your work until you get it right.

The fact that, if you work correctly, you get the same answer for questions 1(a) and 1(b) is an example of a certain property of addition and multiplication called the **distributive property**. You use this property each time you multiply a number in parts. For example, you may calculate  $3 \times 24$  by calculating

 $3 \times 20$  and  $3 \times 4$ , and then add the two answers:

$$3 \times 24 = 3 \times 20 + 3 \times 4$$

spread out". The distributive properties may be described as follows:

The word *distribute* means "to

a(b + c) = ab + ac and a(b - c) = ab - ac,

where a, b and c can be any numbers.

What you saw in question 1 was that  $5 \times 100 = 5 \times 13 + 5 \times 87$ . This can also be expressed by writing 5(13 + 87).

2. (a) Calculate  $10 \times 56$ .

(b) Calculate  $10 \times 16 + 10 \times 40$ .

3. Write down any two numbers smaller than 100. Let us call them *x* and *y*.

(a) Add your two numbers, and multiply the answer by 6.

(b) Calculate  $6 \times x$  and  $6 \times y$  and add the two answers.

(c) If you do not get the same answers for (a) and (b) you have made a mistake somewhere. Correct your work.

4. Complete the table.

| (a) | Х              | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|-----|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|
|     | 3(x + 2)       |   |   |   |   |   |
|     | 3x + 6         |   |   |   |   |   |
|     | 3x + 2         |   |   |   |   |   |
|     | 3(x-2)         |   |   |   |   |   |
|     | 3 <i>x</i> – 6 |   |   |   |   |   |
|     | 3x - 2         |   |   |   |   |   |

(b) If you do not get the same answers for the expressions 3(x + 2) and 3x + 6, and for 3(x - 2) and 3x - 6, you have made a mistake somewhere. Correct your work.

In algebra we normally write 3(x + 2) instead of  $3 \times (x + 2)$ . The expression  $3 \times (x + 2)$  does not mean that you should first multiply by 3 when you evaluate the expression for a certain value of x. The brackets tell you that the first thing you should do is add the value(s) of x to 2 and then multiply the answer by 3.

However, instead of first adding the values within the brackets and then multiplying the answer by 3 we may just do the calculation  $3 \times x + 3 \times 2 = 3x + 6$  as shown in the table.

| ` ′   | Which expressions amongst those given in the table are equivalent? Explain. |
|-------|---|
|       |   |
|       | For what value(s) of $x$ is $3(x + 2) = 3x + 2$ ?                           |
|       | Try to find a value of $x$ such that $3(x + 2) \neq 3x + 6$ .               |
|       |   |
| • • • |   |
|       |   |

If multiplication is the last step in evaluating an algebraic expression, then the expression is called a **product expression** or, briefly, a **product**. The way you evaluated the expression 3(x + 2) in the table is an example of a product expression.

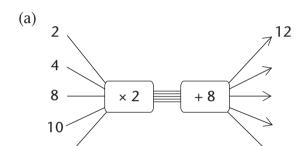
5. (a) Determine the value of 5x + 15 if x = 6.....

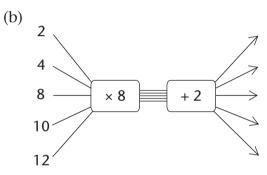
(b) Determine the value of 5(x + 3) if x = 6.....

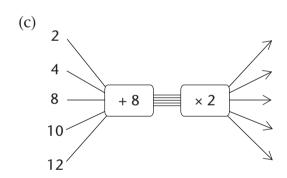
(c) Can we use the expression 5x + 15 to calculate the value of 5(x + 3) for any values of x? Explain.

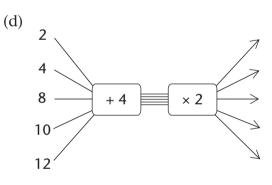
6. Complete the flow diagrams.

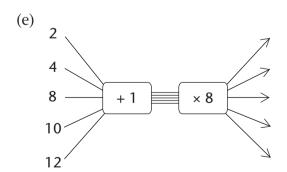
12

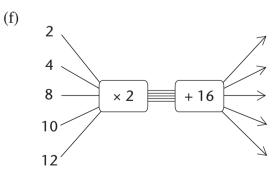












| 7. | (a)  | (a) Which of the above flow diagrams produce the same output numbers?   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|--|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|    | (b)  | Write an algebraic expression for each  | h of the flow diagrams in question 6.       |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | • • • •  |   | •••••••                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | • • • •  | •   | ••••••                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | • • • •  | •   | ••••••                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| P  | ROD  | OUCT EXPRESSIONS AND SUM EX   | (PRESSIONS                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1. |  | mplete the following: $(3+6)+(3+6)+(3+6)+(3+6)+(3+6)$   | + 6)  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (b)  | $= \dots \times (\dots)$ $(3+6) + $ | + 6)  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | $= (3 + 3 + \dots) + (\dots$<br>= $( \times ) + ( \times )$   | )   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2. | Coı  | mplete the following:   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (a) $(3x+6) + (3x+6) + (3x+6) + (3x+6) + (3x+6)$ |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (b)  | = (3x+6) + (3x+6) + (3x+6) + (3x+6)   | +(3x+6)                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | $= (3x + 3x + \dots) + (\dots$  | )   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| _  |  | = (   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. |  | each case, write an expression without<br>given expression.   | brackets that will give the same results as |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | 3(x+7)  | (b) $10(2x+1)$                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | • • •  | ••••••••••••  | ••••••                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (c)  | x(4x+6)   | (d) $3(2p+q)$                               |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    |  | t(t+9)  | (f) $x(y+z)$                                |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | (g)  | 2b(b+a-4)   | (h) $k^2(k-m)$                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|    | • • •  |   | ••••••                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |

The process of writing product expressions as sum expressions is called **expansion**. It is sometimes also referred to as **multiplication of algebraic expressions**.

4. (a) Complete the table for the given values of x, y and z.

|               | 3(x+2y+4z) | 3x + 6y + 12z | 3x + 2y + 4z |
|---------------|------------|---------------|--------------|
| x = 1         |            |               |              |
| y = 2         |            |               |              |
| z = 3         |            |               |              |
| x = 10        |            |               |              |
| y = 20        |            |               |              |
| z = 30        |            |               |              |
| x = 23        |            |               |              |
| y = 60        |            |               |              |
| z = 100       |            |               |              |
| <i>x</i> = 14 |            |               |              |
| y = 0         |            |               |              |
| z = 1         |            |               |              |
| x = 5         |            |               |              |
| <i>y</i> = 9  |            |               |              |
| z = 32        |            |               |              |

| (b) | Which sum expression and product expression are equivalent? |  |
|-----|---|--|
|     |   |  |

5. For each expression, write an equivalent expression without brackets.

(a) 
$$2(x^2 + x + 1)$$

(b) 
$$p(q+r+s)$$

(c) 
$$-3(x+2y+3z)$$

(d) 
$$x(2x^2 + x + 7)$$

.....

(e) 
$$6x(8-2x)$$

(f) 
$$12x(4-x)$$

(g) 3x(8x-5)-4x(6x-5)

(h) 
$$10x(3x(8x-5)-4x(6x-5))$$

••••••

## 8.2 Simplifying algebraic expressions

#### **EXPAND, REARRANGE AND THEN COMBINE LIKE TERMS**

|    | •   |   |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | Write the shortest possible equivalent exp<br>(a) $x + 2(x + 3)$  | pression without brackets. (b) $5(4x + 3) + 5x$ |
|    | ••••••••••••  |   |
|    | (c) $5(x+5) + 3(2x+1)$  | (d) $(5+x)^2$                                   |
|    | •••••••••••   | ••••••••••••                                    |
|    | ••••••  | •••••••••••                                     |
|    | (e) $-3(x^2 + 2x - 3) + 3(x^2 + 4x)$  | (f) $x(x-1) + x + 2$                            |
|    |   |   |
|    | ••••••  | •••••   |
|    | When you are not sure whether you simple expression correctly, you should always concount your work by evaluating the original expression for some value the variables. | heck<br>ession                                  |
| 2. | (a) Evaluate $x(x + 2) + 5x^2 - 2x$ for $x = 10$ .  |   |

(b) Evaluate  $6x^2$  for x = 10.

(c) Can we use the expression  $6x^2$  to calculate the values of the expression  $x(x+2) + 5x^2 - 2x$  for any given value of x? Explain.

This is how a sum expression for  $x(x + 2) + 5x^2 - 2x$  can be made:

$$x(x+2) + 5x^{2} - 2x = x \times x + x \times 2 + 5x^{2} - 2x$$

$$= x^{2} + 2x + 5x^{2} - 2x$$

$$= x^{2} + 5x^{2} + 2x - 2x$$

$$= 6x^{2} + 0$$

$$= 6x^{2}$$

[Rearrange and combine like terms]

3. Evaluate the following expressions for x = -5:

(a) 
$$x + 2(x + 3)$$

(b) 
$$5(4x+3)+5x$$

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

(c) 
$$5(x+5) + 3(2x+1)$$

(d) 
$$(5+x)^2$$

.....

(e) 
$$-3(x^2+2x-3)+3(x^2+4x)$$

(f) 
$$x(x-1) + x + 2$$

.....

4. Complete the table for the given values of x, y and z.

|             | 1   | 1  | 1  |    | 1  |
|-------------|-----|----|----|----|----|
| X           | 100 | 80 | 10 | 20 | 30 |
| у           | 50  | 40 | 5  | 5  | 20 |
| Z           | 20  | 30 | 2  | 15 | 10 |
| x + (y - z) |     |    |    |    |    |
| x-(y-z)     |     |    |    |    |    |
| x-y-z       |     |    |    |    |    |
| X-(y+z)     |     |    |    |    |    |
| x + y - z   |     |    |    |    |    |
| x-y+z       |     |    |    |    |    |

5. Say whether the following statements are true or false. Refer to the table in question 4. For any values of x, y and z:

(a) x + (y - z) = x + y - z(b) x - (y - z) = x - y - z

6. Write the expressions without brackets. Do not simplify.

(a) 
$$3x - (2y + z)$$
 (b)  $-x + 3(y - 2z)$ 

We can simplify algebraic expressions by using properties of operations as shown:

$$(5x + 3) - 2(x + 1)$$

Hence 
$$5x + 3 - 2x - 2$$

Hence 
$$5x - 2x + 3 - 2$$

Hence 3x + 1

$$x - (y + z) = x - y - z$$

Addition is both associative and commutative.

7. Write an equivalent expression without brackets for each of the following expressions and then simplify:

(a) 
$$22x + (13x - 5)$$

(b) 
$$22x - (13x - 5)$$

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

(c) 
$$22x - (13x + 5)$$

(d) 
$$4x - (15 - 6x)$$

•••••

8. Simplify.

(a) 
$$2(x^2+1)-x-2$$

(b) 
$$-3(x^2+2x-3)+3x^2$$

.....

Here are some of the techniques we have used so far to form equivalent expressions:

- Remove brackets
- Rearrange terms
- Combine like terms

## 8.3 Simplifying quotient expressions

#### FROM QUOTIENT EXPRESSIONS TO SUM EXPRESSIONS

1. Complete the table for the given values of x.

| Х                    | 1 | 7 | -3 | -10 |
|----------------------|---|---|----|-----|
| $7x^2 + 5x$          |   |   |    |     |
|                      |   |   |    |     |
|                      |   |   |    |     |
| $\frac{7x^2 + 5x}{}$ |   |   |    |     |
| X                    |   |   |    |     |
|                      |   |   |    |     |
|                      |   |   |    |     |
| 7                    |   |   |    |     |
| 7x + 5               |   |   |    |     |
| 7x + 5x              |   |   |    |     |
| 7 7 7 3 3            |   |   |    |     |
| $7x^2 + 5$           |   |   |    |     |
|                      |   |   |    |     |
|                      |   |   |    |     |

| $\alpha = 0$ ? |
|----------------|
| <b>ί</b> =     |

(b) What is the value of 
$$\frac{7x^2 + 5x}{x}$$
 for  $x = 0$ ?

(c) Which of the two expressions, 
$$7x + 5$$
 or  $\frac{7x^2 + 5x}{x}$ , requires fewer calculations? Explain.

.....

(d) Are the expressions 7x + 5 and  $\frac{7x^2 + 5x}{x}$  equivalent, x = 0 excluded? Explain.

(e) Are there any other expressions that are equivalent to  $\frac{7x^2 + 5x}{x}$  from those given in the table? Explain.

If division is the last step in evaluating an algebraic expression, then the expression is called a **quotient expression** or an **algebraic fraction**.

The expression  $\frac{7x^2+5x}{x}$  is an example of a quotient expression or algebraic fraction.

3. Complete the table for the given values of x.

| X                       | 5 | 10 | -5 | -10 |
|-------------------------|---|----|----|-----|
| $10x - 5x^2$            |   |    |    |     |
| 5 <i>x</i>              |   |    |    |     |
| $10y - 5y^2$            |   |    |    |     |
| $\frac{10x - 5x^2}{5x}$ |   |    |    |     |
|                         |   |    |    |     |
|                         |   |    |    |     |
| 2-x                     |   |    |    |     |

(a) What is the value of 2 - x for x = 0?

.....

(b) What is the value of  $\frac{10x - 5x^2}{5x}$  for x = 0?

(c) Are the expressions 2-x and  $\frac{10x-5x^2}{5x}$  equivalent, x=0 excluded? Explain.

(d) Which of the two expressions 2-x or  $\frac{10x-5x^2}{5x}$  requires fewer calculations? Explain.

We have found that quotient expressions such as  $\frac{10x-5x^2}{5x}$  can sometimes be manipulated to give equivalent expressions such as 2-x.

The value of this is that these equivalent expressions require fewer calculations.

The expressions  $\frac{10x - 5x^2}{5x}$  and 2 - x are not quite equivalent because for x = 0, the value of 2 - x can be calculated, while the first expression has no value.

However, we can say that the two expressions are equivalent if they have the same values for all values of *x* admissible for both expressions.

How is it possible that  $\frac{7x^2 + 5x}{x} = 7x + 5$  and  $\frac{10x - 5x^2}{5x} = 2 - x$  for all admissible values of x? We say x = 0 is not an admissible value of x because division by 0 is not allowed.

One of the methods for finding equivalent expressions for algebraic fractions is by means of division:

$$\frac{7x^2 + 5x}{x} = \frac{1}{x}(7x^2 + 5x)$$
 [just as  $\frac{3}{5} = 3 \times \frac{1}{5}$ ]
$$= (\frac{1}{x} \times 7x^2) + (\frac{1}{x} \times 5x)$$
 [distributive property]
$$= \frac{7x^2}{x} + \frac{5x}{x}$$

$$= 7x + 5$$
 [provided  $x \neq 0$ ]

4. Use the method shown on the previous page to simplify each fraction below.  $20x^2 + 16x$ 

$$(a) \quad \frac{8x+10z+6}{2}$$

(b) 
$$\frac{20x^2 + 16x}{4}$$

......

(c) 
$$\frac{9x^2y + xy}{xy}$$

(d) 
$$\frac{21ab - 14a^2}{7a}$$

•••••••••••••••••••••••••

Simplifying a quotient expression can sometimes lead to a result which still contains quotients, as you can see in the example below.

$$\frac{5x^2 + 3x}{x^2}$$

$$= \frac{5x^2}{x^2} + \frac{3x}{x^2}$$

$$= 5 + \frac{3}{x}$$

5. (a) Evaluate  $\frac{5x^2 + 3x}{x^2}$  for x = -1.

•••••

(b) For the expression  $\frac{5x^2 + 3x}{x^2}$  to be equivalent to  $5 + \frac{3}{x}$  which value of x must be excluded? Why?

•••••

| о. | Simplify the following expressions:  |   |
|----|--|---|
|    | $(a)  \frac{8x^2 + 2x + 4}{2x}$  | (b) $\frac{4n+1}{n}$                                |
|    | •••••••••••  | •••••••••••   |
|    | •••••  | •••••••   |
| 7. | Evaluate:  |   |
|    | (a) $\frac{8x^2 + 2x + 4}{2x}$ for $x = 2$   | (b) $\frac{4n+1}{n}$ for $n=4$                      |
|    |  |   |
|    | ••••••   | •••••   |
| 8. | Simplify.  |   |
|    | (a) $\frac{6x^4 - 12x^3 + 2}{2x}$  | (b) $\frac{-6n^4 - 4n}{6n}$                         |
|    |  |   |
|    |  |   |
| 9. | When Natasha and Lebogang were asked for $x = 10$ , they did it in different ways. | to evaluate the expression $\frac{x^2 + 2x + 1}{x}$ |
|    | Natasha's calculation:   | Lebogang's calculation:                             |
|    | $10 + 2 + \frac{1}{10}$  | $\frac{100 + 20 + 1}{10}$                           |
|    | $=12\frac{1}{10}$  | $=\frac{121}{10}$                                   |
|    |  | $=12\frac{1}{10}$                                   |
|    | Explain how each of them thought about   | evaluating the given expression.                    |
|    | •••••  |   |
|    |  |   |

#### Squares, cubes and roots of expressions 8.4

#### **SIMPLIFYING SQUARES AND CUBES**

Study the following example:

$$(3x)^2 = 3x \times 3x$$

$$= 3 \times x \times 3 \times x$$

$$= 3 \times 3 \times x \times x$$

$$=9x^{2}$$

Meaning of squaring

Multiplication is commutative:  $a \times b = b \times a$ 

We say that  $(3x)^2$  simplifies to  $9x^2$ 

1. Simplify the expressions.

(a) 
$$(2x)^2$$

(a) 
$$(2x)^2$$

(b) 
$$(2x^2)^2$$

(c) 
$$(-3y)^2$$

2. Simplify the expressions.

(a) 
$$25x - 16x$$

(b) 
$$4y + y + 3y$$

(c) 
$$a + 17a - 3a$$

3. Simplify.

(a) 
$$(25x - 16x)^2$$

(b) 
$$(4y + y + 3y)^2$$

(c) 
$$(a + 17a - 3a)^2$$

$$(3x)^3 = 3x \times 3x \times 3x$$

$$= 3 \times x \times 3 \times x \times 3 \times x$$

Study the following example:

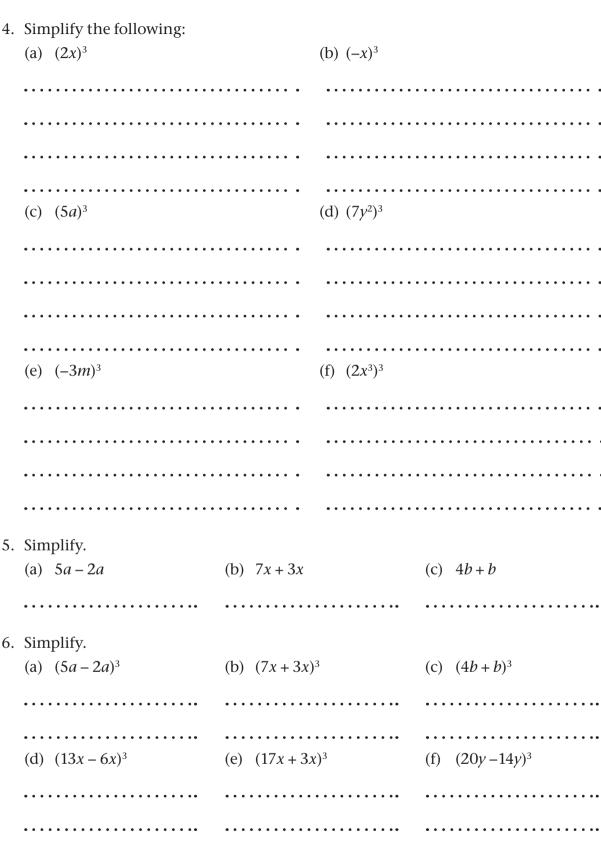
$$= 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times x \times x \times x$$

$$=27x^{3}$$

Meaning of cubing

Multiplication is commutative:  $a \times b = b \times a$ 

We say that  $(3x)^3$  simplifies to  $27x^3$ 



Always remember to test whether the simplified expression is equivalent to the given expression for at least three different values of the given variable.

#### **SQUARE AND CUBE ROOTS OF EXPRESSIONS**

| 1. | Thabang and his friend Vuyiswa were asked to simplify $\sqrt{2a^2 \times 2a^2}$ . Thabang reasoned as follows:  To find the square root of a number is the same as asking yourself the question:  "Which number was multiplied by itself?" The number that is multiplied by itself is $2a^2$ and therefore $\sqrt{2a^2 \times 2a^2} = 2a^2$ |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|
|    | Vuyiswa reasoned as follows:  |  |  |
|    | I should first simplify $2a^2 \times 2a^2$ to get $4a^4$  | and then calculate $\sqrt{4a^4} = 2a^2$  |  |
|    | Which of the two methods do you prefer  | ? Explain why.                           |  |
|    | ••••••••••  | ••••••••••                               |  |
| 2. | Say whether each of the following is true   | or false. Give a reason for your answer. |  |
|    | (a) $\sqrt{6x \times 6x} = 6x$  | (b) $\sqrt{5x^2 \times 5x^2} = 5x^2$     |  |
|    |   | ••••••                                   |  |
|    |   | ••••••                                   |  |
| 3. | Simplify.   |  |  |
| ·  | (a) $y^6 \times y^6$  | (b) $125x^2 + 44x^2$                     |  |
|    |   |  |  |
| 4  | Simplify.   |  |  |
| 1. | (a) $\sqrt{y^{12}}$   | (b) $\sqrt{125x^2 + 44x^2}$              |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••                                    |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••                                    |  |
|    | •••••   | ••••••                                   |  |
|    | (c) $\sqrt{25a^2 - 16a^2}$  | (d) $\sqrt{121y^2}$                      |  |
|    | •••••   | •  |  |
|    |   |  |  |
|    | (e) $\sqrt{16a^2 + 9a^2}$   | (f) $\sqrt{25a^2 - 9a^2}$                |  |
|    | ••••••••••••  | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |  |

| 5. | What does it mean to find the cube root of $8x^3$ written as $\sqrt[3]{8x^3}$ ? |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|
|    | •••••   |  |  |
| 6. | Simplify the following:   |  |  |
|    | (a) $2a \times 2a \times 2a$  | (b) $10b^3 \times 10b^3 \times 10b^3$  |  |
|    |   |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |
|    | (a) 2.3 2.3 2.3   | (d) 2.3 2.3 2.3                        |  |
|    | (c) $3x^3 \times 3x^3 \times 3x^3$  | $(d) -3x^3 \times -3x^3 \times -3x^3$  |  |
|    | •••••   |  |  |
|    | •••••   |  |  |
| 7  | Determine the following.  |  |  |
| /. | Determine the following:  |  |  |
|    | (a) $\sqrt[3]{1000b^9}$   | (b) $\sqrt[3]{2a \times 2a \times 2a}$ |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••                                  |  |
|    | (c) $\sqrt[3]{27x^3}$   | (d) $\sqrt[3]{-27x^3}$                 |  |
|    | (c) \\27\lambda   | (a) V 2/X                              |  |
|    | •••••   | •••••                                  |  |
|    | •••••   |  |  |
| 8  | Simplify the following expressions:   |  |  |
| 0. | (a) $6x^3 + 2x^3$   | (b) $-m^3 - 3m^3 - 4m^3$               |  |
|    |   |  |  |
|    |   |  |  |
| 9. | Determine the following:  |  |  |
|    | (a) $\sqrt[3]{6x^3 + 2x^3}$   | (b) $\sqrt[3]{-8m^3}$                  |  |
|    |   |  |  |
|    | ••••••  | ••••••                                 |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | •••••                                  |  |
|    |   | •••••                                  |  |
|    | (c) $\sqrt[3]{125y^3}$  | (d) $\sqrt[3]{93a^3 + 123a^3}$         |  |
|    |   |  |  |
|    | ••••••  | •••••                                  |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | •••••                                  |  |
|    | ••••  | •••••                                  |  |

#### **WORKSHEET**

1. Simplify the following:

(a) 
$$2(3b+1)+4$$

(b) 
$$6 - (2 + 5e)$$

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

(c) 
$$18mn + 22mn + 70mn$$

2. Evaluate each of the following expressions for m = 10:

(a) 
$$3m^2 + m + 10$$

(b) 
$$5(m^2 - 5) + m^2 + 25$$

3. (a) Simplify:  $\frac{4b+6}{2}$ 

(b) Evaluate the expression  $\frac{4b+6}{2}$  for b=100.

4. Simplify.

(a) 
$$(4g)^2$$

(c) 
$$(7s + 3s)^2$$

5. Determine the following:

(a) 
$$\sqrt{121b^2}$$

(b) 
$$\sqrt[3]{64y^3}$$

(c) 
$$\sqrt{63d^2+18d^2}$$

# CHAPTER 9 Algebraic equations 2

In this chapter you will solve equations by applying inverse operations. You will also solve equations that contain exponents.

| 9.1 | Thinking forwards and backwards                                  | 167 |
|-----|--|-----|
| 9.2 | Solving equations using the additive and multiplicative inverses | 170 |
| 9.3 | Solving equations involving powers                               | 172 |

CHAPTER 9: ALGEBRAIC EQUATIONS 2 165

$$5 \times 9^2 + 4 \times 9 - 3$$

$$5 \times 8^2 + 4 \times 8 - 3$$

$$5 \times 12^2 + 4 \times 12 - 3$$

$$5 \times 20^2 + 4 \times 20 - 3$$

$$5 \times 2^2 + 4 \times 2 - 3$$

$$5 \times x^2 + 4 \times x - 3$$

$$5x^2 + 4x - 3$$

$$5 \times 7^2 + 4 \times 7 - 3$$

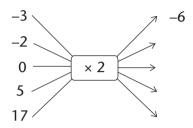
$$5 \times 25^2 + 4 \times 25 - 3$$

# 9 Algebraic equations 2

## 9.1 Thinking forwards and backwards

#### **DOING AND UNDOING WHAT HAS BEEN DONE**

1. Complete the flow diagram by finding the output values.



2. Complete the table.

| X          | -3 | -2 | 0 | 5 | 17 |
|------------|----|----|---|---|----|
| 2 <i>x</i> |    |    |   |   |    |

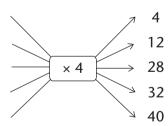
3. Evaluate 4*x* if:

(a) 
$$x = -7$$

(b) 
$$x = 10$$

(c) 
$$x = 0$$

4. (a) Complete the flow diagram by finding the input values.



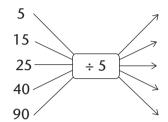
(b) Puleng put another integer into the flow diagram and got –68 as an answer. Which integer did she put in? Show your calculation.

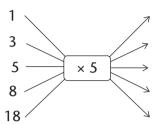
(c) Explain how you worked to find the input numbers when you did question (a).

5. (a) Complete the table.

| х          |   |    |    |    |    |
|------------|---|----|----|----|----|
| 5 <i>x</i> | 5 | 15 | 25 | 40 | 90 |

(b) Complete the flow diagrams.





(c) Explain how you completed the table.

One of the things we do in algebra is to **evaluate** expressions. When we evaluate expressions we replace a variable in the expression with an **input number** to obtain the value of the expression called the **output number**. We will think of this process as a **doing process**.

However, in other cases we may need to undo what was done. When we know what output number was obtained but do not know what input number was used, we have to **undo** what was done in evaluating the expression. In such a case we say we are **solving** an **equation**.

6. Look again at questions 1 to 5. For each question, say whether the question required a doing or an undoing process. Give an explanation for your answer (for example: input to output).

| 7.  | (a)      | Complete the flow diagrams below.  |
|-----|----------|--|
|     |          | $1 \longrightarrow +6 \longrightarrow 7 \longrightarrow -6 \longrightarrow$            |
|     | (b)      | What do you observe?   |
|     |          |  |
| 8.  | (a)      | Complete the flow diagrams below.  |
|     |          | $2 \longrightarrow \times 5 \longrightarrow 10 \longrightarrow \div 5 \longrightarrow$ |
|     | (b)      | What do you observe?   |
|     |          |  |
| 9.  | (a)      | Complete the flow diagrams below.  |
|     |          | $20 \xrightarrow{\times 5} + 5  105 \xrightarrow{-5} \div 5 $                          |
|     | (b)      | What do you observe?   |
|     |          | ,<br>  |
| 10. | (a)      | Complete the flow diagram below.   |
|     | ()       | $64  \left( \div 8 \right) \left( +12 \right) \longrightarrow$                         |
|     | (b)      | What calculations will you do to determine what the input number was when              |
|     | (5)      | the output number is 20?   |
|     | • • •    |  |
| Sol | lve t    | he following problems by undoing what was done to get the answer:                      |
| 11. | Wh       | en a certain number is multiplied by 10 the answer is 150. What is the number?         |
|     |          |  |
| 12  |          | on a cortain number is divided by 5 the angrees is 1. What is the number?              |
| 12. | , VV I I | en a certain number is divided by 5 the answer is 1. What is the number?               |
|     | • • •    |  |
| 13. | Wh       | en 23 is added to a certain number the answer is 107. What is the original number      |
|     | • • •    | •  |
| 14. |          | en a certain number is multiplied by 5 and 2 is subtracted from the answer, the        |
|     | fina     | al answer is 13. What is the original number?  |
|     | • • •    |  |

Moving from the output value to the input value is called **solving the equation for the unknown**.

# 9.2 Solving equations using the additive and multiplicative inverses

#### FINDING THE UNKNOWN

Consider the equation 3x + 2 = 23.

We can represent the equation 3x + 2 = 23 in a flow diagram, where x represents an unknown number:

$$x \longrightarrow x \longrightarrow 2$$

When you reverse the process in the flow diagram, you start with the output number 23, then subtract 2 and then divide the answer by 3:

We can write all of the above reverse process as follows:

Subtract 2 from both sides of the equation:

$$3x + 2 - 2 = 23 - 2$$
$$3x = 21$$

Divide both sides by 3:

$$\frac{3x}{3} = \frac{21}{3}$$
$$x = 7$$

We say x = 7 is the solution of 3x + 2 = 23 because  $3 \times 7 + 2 = 23$ . We say that x = 7 makes the equation 3x + 2 = 23 true.

The numbers +2 and -2 are **additive inverses** of each other. When we add a number and its additive inverse we always get 0.

The numbers 3 and  $\frac{1}{3}$  are **multiplicative inverses** of each other. When we multiply a number and its multiplicative inverse we always get 1, so  $3 \times \frac{1}{3} = 1$ 

The additive and multiplicative inverses help us to isolate the unknown value or the input value.

#### Also remember:

- The multiplicative property of 1: the product of any number and 1 is that number.
- The additive property
   of 0: the sum of any number
   and 0 is that number.

Solve the equations below by using the additive and multiplicative inverses. Check your answers.

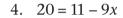
1. 
$$x + 10 = 0$$

2. 
$$49x + 2 = 100$$

••••••

••••••••••

3. 2x = 1



•••••

In some cases you need to collect like terms before you can solve the equations using additive and multiplicative inverses, as in the example below:

**Example:** Solve for 
$$x$$
:  $7x + 3x = 10$ 

$$10x = 10$$

$$10x = 10$$

$$\frac{10x}{10} = \frac{10}{10}$$

$$x = 1$$

7x and 3x are like terms and can be replaced with one equivalent expression (7 + 3)x = 10x.

5. 
$$4x + 6x = 20$$

6. 
$$5x = 40 + 3x$$

.....

| 7. | 3)  | κ - | +   | 1 - |   | X   | = | 0 |     |   |   |     |   |   |   |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |       |   | 8 | 3. |   | х   | <u>'</u> - | + . | 2 | 0 | + | 4 | د <del>ا</del> | ζ = | = | _ | 5 | 5 |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|---|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|-------|---|---|----|---|-----|------------|-----|---|---|---|---|----------------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|-------|---|---|---|---|-----|-------|---|---|
|    | • • | •   | • • | •   | • |     | • | • | • • | • | • |     | • |   | • | •   |     | • | • | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • |   | •  | • | •   | • •        |     | • | • | • | • | •              | • • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • | • |
|    | • • |     |     |     |   |     |   |   |     |   |   |     |   |   |   |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |    |   |     |            |     |   |   |   |   |                |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |
|    | ••  |     |     |     |   |     |   |   |     |   |   |     |   |   |   |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |    |   |     |            |     |   |   |   |   |                |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |
|    | • • | •   | • • | •   | • | • • | • | • | • • | • | • | • • | • | • | • | •   | • • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • • | <br>• | • |   | •  | • | •   | • •        | • • | • | • | • | • | •              | • • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • • | <br>• | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • | • |
|    | • • | •   | • • | •   | • | • • | • | • | • • | • | • | • • | • | • | • | • • | • • | • | • | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • |   | •  | • | •   |            | •   | • | • | • | • | •              | • • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • • | <br>• | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • | • |
|    | ••  | •   | • • | •   | • |     | • | • | • • | • |   |     | • |   | • | • • |     | • | • | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • |   | •  | • | • • | • •        | •   | • | • | • | • | •              | • • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | •   | <br>• | • | • | • | • | • • | <br>• | • | • |
|    |     |     |     |     |   |     |   |   |     |   |   |     |   |   |   |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |    |   |     |            |     |   |   |   |   |                |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |   |   |     |       |   |   |

## 9.3 Solving equations involving powers

Solving an exponential equation is the same as asking the question: **To what exponent must the base be raised in order to make the equation true?** 

1. Complete the table.

| х     | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
|-------|---|---|---|---|
| $2^x$ |   |   |   |   |

2. Complete the table.

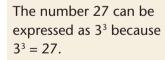
| х     |   | 2 |    | 5 |
|-------|---|---|----|---|
| $3^x$ | 1 |   | 27 |   |

Karina solved the equation  $3^x = 27$  as follows:

$$3^x = 27$$

Hence  $3^x = 3^3$ 

Hence x = 3



3. Now use Karina's method and solve for *x* in each of the following:

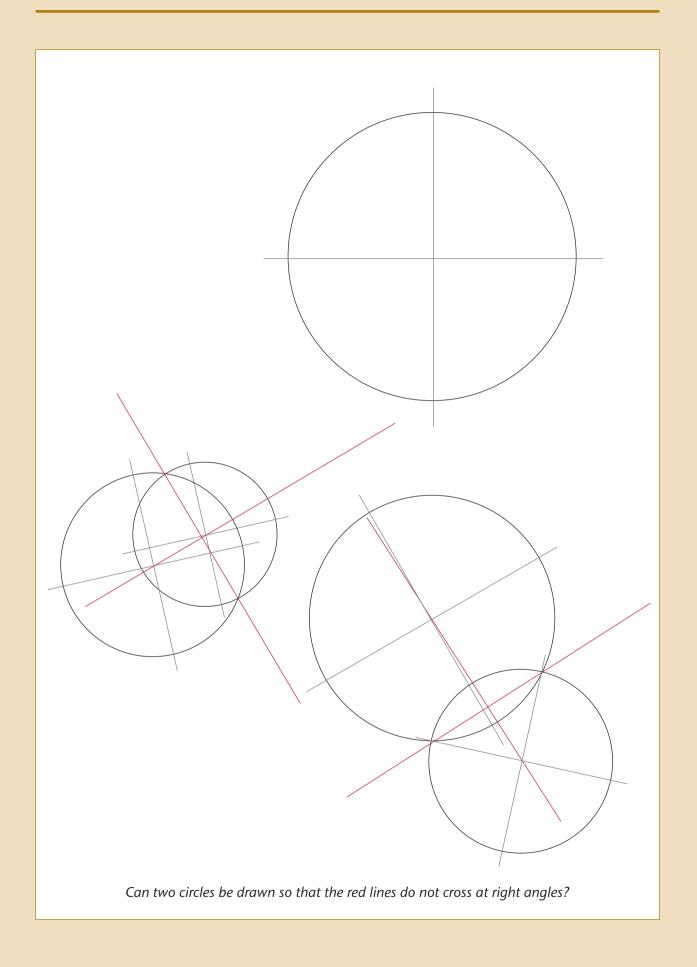
- (a)  $2^x = 32$
- (b)  $4^x = 16$
- (c)  $6^x = 216$
- (d)  $5^{x+1} = 125$

.....

# CHAPTER 10 Construction of geometric figures

In this chapter, you will learn how to construct, or draw, different lines, angles and shapes. You will use drawing instruments, such as a ruler, to draw straight lines, a protractor to measure and draw angles, and a compass to draw arcs that are a certain distance from a point. Through the various constructions, you will investigate some of the properties of triangles and quadrilaterals; in other words, you will find out more about what is always true about all or certain types of triangles and quadrilaterals.

| 10.1 | Bisecting lines                                  | 175 |
|------|--|-----|
| 10.2 | Constructing perpendicular lines                 | 177 |
| 10.3 | Bisecting angles                                 | 179 |
| 10.4 | Constructing special angles without a protractor | 181 |
| 10.5 | Constructing triangles                           | 182 |
| 10.6 | Properties of triangles                          | 185 |
| 10.7 | Properties of quadrilaterals                     | 187 |
| 10.8 | Constructing quadrilaterals                      | 189 |



## 10 Construction of geometric figures

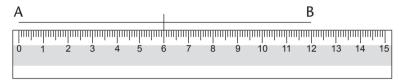
## 10.1 Bisecting lines

When we construct, or draw, geometric figures, we often need to bisect lines or angles. **Bisect** means to cut something into two equal parts. There are different ways to bisect a line segment.

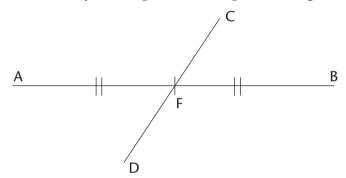
#### **BISECTING A LINE SEGMENT WITH A RULER**

1. Read through the following steps.

**Step 1:** Draw line segment AB and determine its midpoint.



**Step 2:** Draw any line segment through the midpoint.



The small marks on AF and FB show that AF and FB are equal.

CD is called a **bisector** because it bisects AB. AF = FB.

2. Use a ruler to draw and bisect the following line segments: AB = 6 cm and XY = 7 cm.

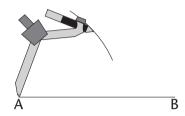
In Grade 6, you learnt how to use a compass to draw circles, and parts of circles called arcs. We can use arcs to bisect a line segment.

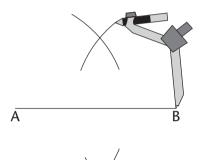
#### **BISECTING A LINE SEGMENT WITH A COMPASS AND RULER**

1. Read through the following steps.

#### Step 1

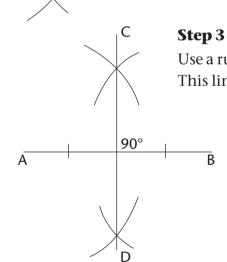
Place the compass on one endpoint of the line segment (point A). Draw an arc above and below the line. (Notice that all the points on the arc above and below the line are the same distance from point A.)





#### Step 2

Without changing the compass width, place the compass on point B. Draw an arc above and below the line so that the arcs cross the first two. (The two points where the arcs cross are the same distance away from point A and from point B.)



Use a ruler to join the points where the arcs **intersect**. This line segment (CD) is the bisector of AB.

> **Intersect** means to cross or meet.

A perpendicular is a line that meets another line at an angle of 90°.

- Notice that CD is also **perpendicular** to AB. So it is also called a **perpendicular bisector**.
- 2. Work in your exercise book. Use a compass and a ruler to practise drawing perpendicular bisectors on line segments.

#### Try this!

Work in your exercise book. Use only a protractor and ruler to draw a perpendicular bisector on a line segment. (Remember that we use a protractor to measure angles.)

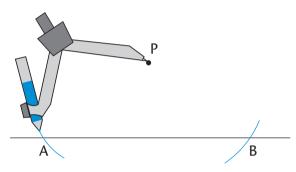
## 10.2 Constructing perpendicular lines

#### A PERPENDICULAR LINE FROM A GIVEN POINT

1. Read through the following steps.

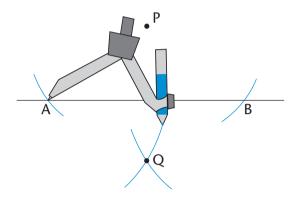
#### Step 1

Place your compass on the given point (point P). Draw an arc across the line on each side of the given point. Do not adjust the compass width when drawing the second arc.



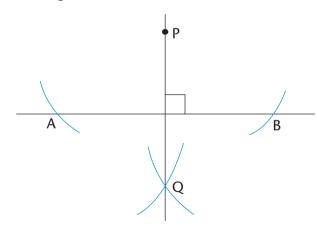
#### Step 2

From each arc on the line, draw another arc on the opposite side of the line from the given point (P). The two new arcs will intersect.



#### Step 3

Use your ruler to join the given point (P) to the point where the arcs intersect (Q).



PQ is perpendicular to AB. We also write it like this: PQ  $\perp$  AB.

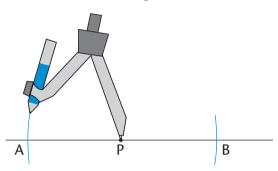
2. Use your compass and ruler to draw a perpendicular line from each given point to the line segment:

#### A PERPENDICULAR LINE AT A GIVEN POINT ON A LINE

1. Read through the following steps.

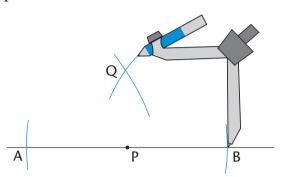
#### Step 1

Place your compass on the given point (P). Draw an arc across the line on each side of the given point. Do not adjust the compass width when drawing the second arc.



#### Step 2

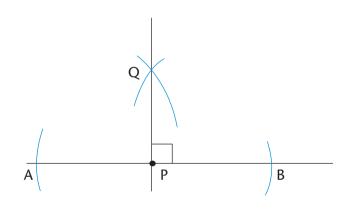
Open your compass so that it is wider than the distance from one of the arcs to the point P. Place the compass on each arc and draw an arc above or below the point P. The two new arcs will intersect.



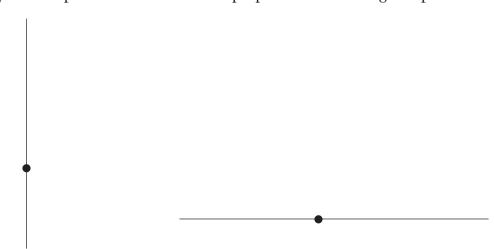
#### Step 3

Use your ruler to join the given point (P) and the point where the arcs intersect (Q).





2. Use your compass and ruler to draw a perpendicular at the given point on each line:



## 10.3 Bisecting angles

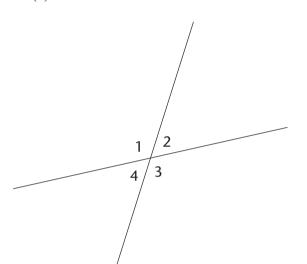
Angles are formed when any two lines meet. We use degrees (°) to measure angles.

#### **MEASURING AND CLASSIFYING ANGLES**

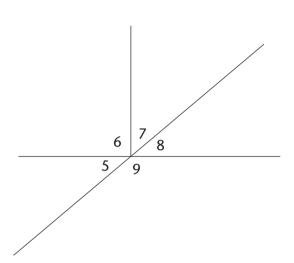
In the figures below, each angle has a number from 1 to 9.

1. Use a protractor to measure the sizes of all the angles in each figure. Write your answers on each figure.

(a)



(b)



2. Use your answers to fill in the angle sizes below.

$$\hat{1} + \hat{2} =$$
°

$$\hat{1} + \hat{4} =$$

$$\overrightarrow{2} + \overrightarrow{3} =$$
  $\overset{\circ}{\ldots}$ 

$$\hat{3} + \hat{4} =$$
 $\hat{1} + \hat{2} + \hat{4} =$ 
 $\hat{0}$ 

$$\hat{1} + \hat{2} + \hat{3} + \hat{4} =$$

$$\hat{7} + \hat{8} =$$

$$\hat{6} + \hat{7} + \hat{8} =$$

$$\ddot{5} + \ddot{6} + \ddot{7} =$$

$$\hat{6} + \hat{5} =$$

$$\hat{5} + \hat{6} + \hat{7} + \hat{8} =$$

$$\hat{5} + \hat{6} + \hat{7} + \hat{8} + \hat{9} =$$

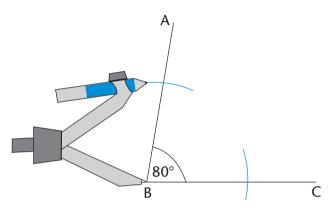
3. Next to each answer above, write down what type of angle it is, namely acute, obtuse, right, straight, reflex or a revolution.

#### **BISECTING ANGLES WITHOUT A PROTRACTOR**

1. Read through the following steps.

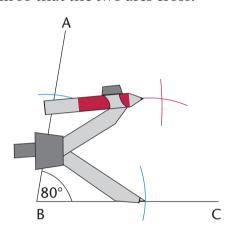
#### Step 1

Place the compass on the vertex of the angle (point B). Draw an arc across each arm of the angle.



#### Step 2

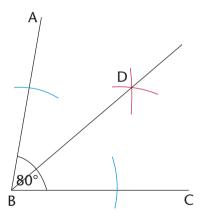
Place the compass on the point where one arc crosses an arm and draw an arc inside the angle. Without changing the compass width, repeat for the other arm so that the two arcs cross.



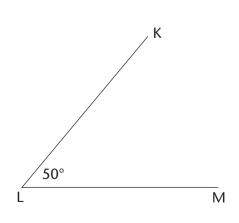
#### Step 3

Use a ruler to join the vertex to the point where the arcs intersect (D).

DB is the bisector of ABC.



2. Use your compass and ruler to bisect the angles below.



P the total the

You could measure each of the angles with a protractor to check if you have bisected the given angle correctly.

R

**180** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 2

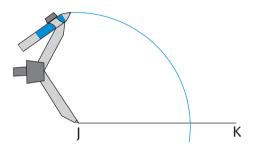
## 10.4 Constructing special angles without a protractor

#### CONSTRUCTING ANGLES OF 60°, 30° AND 120°

1. Read through the following steps.

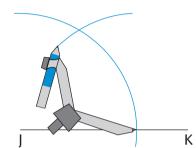
#### Step 1

Draw a line segment (JK). With the compass on point J, draw an arc across JK and up over above point J.



## Step 2

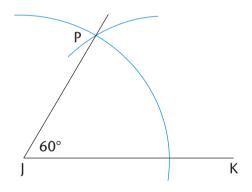
Without changing the compass width, move the compass to the point where the arc crosses JK, and draw an arc that crosses the first one.



#### Step 3

Join point J to the point where the two arcs meet (point P).

 $P\hat{J}K = 60^{\circ}$ 



- 2. (a) Construct an angle of 60° at point B on the next page.
  - (b) Bisect the angle you constructed.
  - (c) Do you notice that the bisected angle consists of two 30° angles?
  - (d) Extend line segment BC to A.Then measure the angle adjacent to the 60° angle.What is its size?.....

(e) The 60° angle and its adjacent angle add up to ......

When you learn more about the properties of triangles later, you will understand why the method above creates a 60° angle. Or can you already work this out now? (*Hint*: What do you know about equilateral triangles?)

Adjacent means "next to".



#### **CONSTRUCTING ANGLES OF 90° AND 45°**

- 1. Construct an angle of 90° at point A. Go back to section 10.2 if you need help.
- 2. Bisect the 90° angle, to create an angle of 45°. Go back to section 10.3 if you need help.



## 10.5 Constructing triangles

In this section, you will learn how to construct triangles. You will need a pencil, a protractor, a ruler and a compass.

A triangle has three sides and three angles. We can construct a triangle when we know some of its measurements, that is, its sides, its angles, or some of its sides and angles.

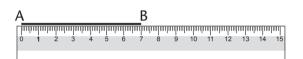
#### **CONSTRUCTING TRIANGLES**

#### Constructing triangles when three sides are given

1. Read through the following steps. They describe how to construct  $\triangle$ ABC with side lengths of 3 cm, 5 cm and 7 cm.

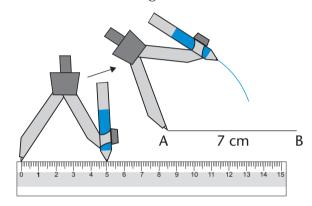
#### Step 1

Draw one side of the triangle using a ruler. It is often easier to start with the longest side.



#### Step 2

Set the compass width to 5 cm. Draw an arc 5 cm away from point A. The third vertex of the triangle will be somewhere along this arc.

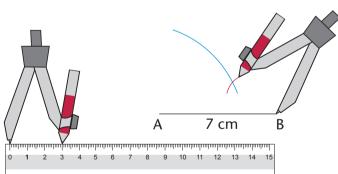


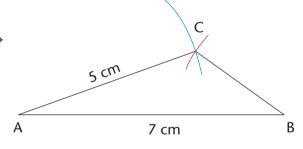
#### Step 3

Set the compass width to 3 cm. Draw an arc from point B. Note where this arc crosses the first arc. This will be the third vertex of the triangle.



Use your ruler to join points A and B to the point where the arcs intersect (C).



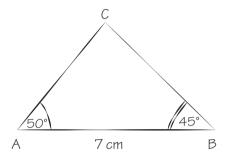


- 2. Work in your exercise book. Follow the steps above to construct the following triangles:
  - (a)  $\triangle$ ABC with sides 6 cm, 7 cm and 4 cm
  - (b)  $\Delta$ KLM with sides 10 cm, 5 cm and 8 cm
  - (c)  $\triangle PQR$  with sides 5 cm, 9 cm and 11 cm

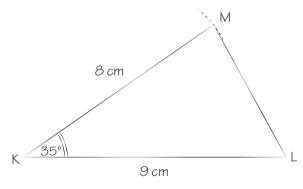
2014/07/03 10:54:13 AM

#### Constructing triangles when certain angles and sides are given

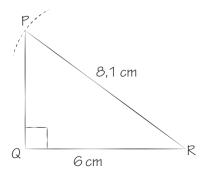
- 3. Use the rough sketches in (a) to (c) below to construct accurate triangles, using a ruler, compass and protractor. Do the construction next to each rough sketch.
  - The dotted lines show where you have to use a compass to measure the length of a side.
  - Use a protractor to measure the size of the given angles.
  - (a) Construct  $\triangle$ ABC, with **two angles and one side given**.



(b) Construct a  $\Delta$ KLM, with **two sides and** an angle given.



(c) Construct right-angled  $\Delta PQR$ , with the **hypotenuse and one other side given**.



- 4. Measure the missing angles and sides of each triangle in 3(a) to (c) on the previous page. Write the measurements at your completed constructions.
- 5. Compare each of your constructed triangles in 3(a) to (c) with a classmate's triangles. Are the triangles exactly the same?
  - If triangles are exactly the same, we say they are **congruent**.

#### **Challenge**

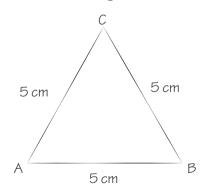
- 1. Construct these triangles:
  - (a)  $\triangle$ STU, with three angles given:  $\hat{S} = 45^{\circ}$ ,  $\hat{T} = 70^{\circ}$  and  $\hat{U} = 65^{\circ}$ .
  - (b)  $\Delta$ XYZ, with two sides and the angle opposite one of the sides given:  $\hat{X} = 50^{\circ}$ , XY = 8 cm and XZ = 7 cm.
- 2. Can you find more than one solution for each triangle above? Explain your findings to a classmate.

## 10.6 Properties of triangles

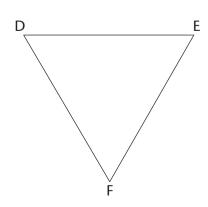
The angles of a triangle can be the same size or different sizes. The sides of a triangle can be the same length or different lengths.

#### PROPERTIES OF EQUILATERAL TRIANGLES

- 1. (a) Construct  $\triangle$ ABC next to its rough sketch below.
  - (b) Measure and label the sizes of all its sides and angles.



- 2. Measure and write down the sizes of the sides and angles of  $\Delta DEF$  on the right.
- 3. Both triangles in questions 1 and 2 are called **equilateral triangles**. Discuss with a classmate if the following is true for an equilateral triangle:
  - All the sides are equal.
  - All the angles are equal to 60°.



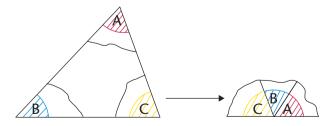
#### PROPERTIES OF ISOSCELES TRIANGLES

- 1. (a) Construct  $\triangle DEF$  with EF = 7 cm,  $\hat{E} = 50^{\circ}$  and  $\hat{F} = 50^{\circ}$ . Also construct  $\triangle JKL$  with JK = 6 cm, KL = 6 cm and  $\hat{J} = 70^{\circ}$ .
  - (b) Measure and label all the sides and angles of each triangle.

- 2. Both triangles above are called **isosceles triangles**. Discuss with a classmate whether the following is true for an isosceles triangle:
  - Only two sides are equal.
  - Only two angles are equal.
  - The two equal angles are opposite the two equal sides.

#### THE SUM OF THE ANGLES IN A TRIANGLE

- 1. Look at your constructed triangles  $\triangle$ ABC,  $\triangle$ DEF and  $\triangle$ JKL above and on the previous page. What is the sum of the three angles each time?.....
- 2. Did you find that the sum of the interior angles of each triangle is 180°? Do the following to check if this is true for other triangles.
  - (a) On a clean sheet of paper, construct any triangle. Label the angles A, B and C and cut out the triangle.
  - (b) Neatly tear the angles off the triangle and fit them next to one another.
  - (c) Notice that  $\hat{A}$ ,  $\hat{B}$  and  $\hat{C}$  form a straight angle. Complete:  $\hat{A} + \hat{B} + \hat{C} = \dots$



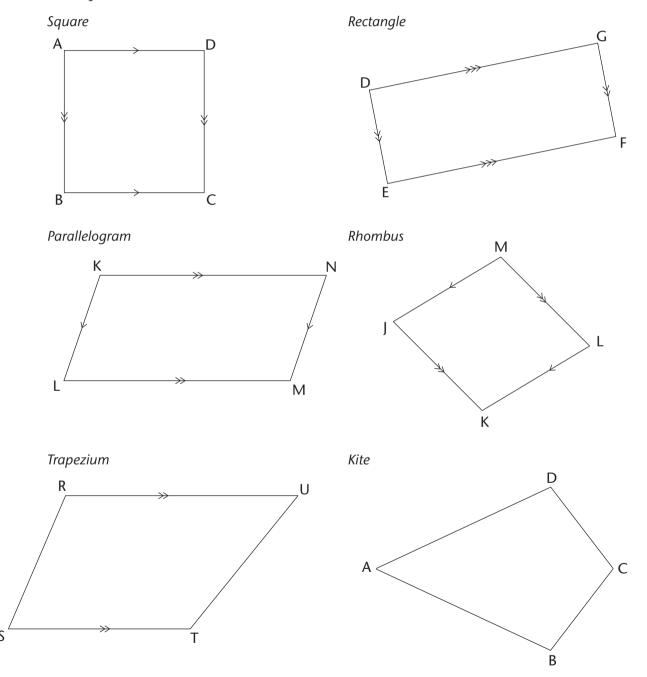
We can conclude that the interior angles of a triangle always add up to 180°.

## 10.7 Properties of quadrilaterals

A quadrilateral is any closed shape with four straight sides. We classify quadrilaterals according to their sides and angles. We note which sides are parallel, perpendicular or equal. We also note which angles are equal.

#### **PROPERTIES OF QUADRILATERALS**

1. Measure and write down the sizes of all the angles and the lengths of all the sides of each quadrilateral below.



Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 187 2014/07/03 10:54:15 AM

**CHAPTER 10: CONSTRUCTION OF GEOMETRIC FIGURES** 

2. Use your answers in question 1. Place a ✓ in the correct box below to show which property is correct for each shape.

| Properties                            | Parallelogram | Rectangle | Rhombus | Square | Kite | Trapezium |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---------|--------|------|-----------|
| Only one pair of sides are parallel   |               |           |         |        |      |           |
| Opposite sides are parallel           |               |           |         |        |      |           |
| Opposite sides are equal              |               |           |         |        |      |           |
| All sides are equal                   |               |           |         |        |      |           |
| Two pairs of adjacent sides are equal |               |           |         |        |      |           |
| Opposite angles are equal             |               |           |         |        |      |           |
| All angles are equal                  |               |           |         |        |      |           |

### SUM OF THE ANGLES IN A QUADRILATERAL

| 1. | Add up the four angles of each quadrilateral on the previous page. What do you notice about the sum of the angles of each quadrilateral?  |
|----|---|
|    |   |
| 2. | Did you find that the sum of the interior angles of each quadrilateral equals 360°? Do the following to check if this is true for other quadrilaterals.   |
|    | <ul> <li>(a) On a clean sheet of paper, use a ruler to construct any quadrilateral.</li> <li>(b) Label the angles A, B, C and D. Cut out the quadrilateral.</li> <li>(c) Neatly tear the angles off the quadrilateral and fit them next to one another.</li> <li>(d) What do you notice?</li> </ul> |
|    | ••••••  |

We can conclude that the interior angles of a quadrilateral always add up to 360°.

## 10.8 Constructing quadrilaterals

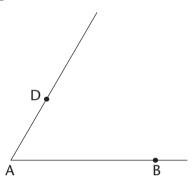
You learnt how to construct perpendicular lines in section 10.2. If you know how to construct parallel lines, you should be able to construct any quadrilateral accurately.

#### **CONSTRUCTING PARALLEL LINES TO DRAW QUADRILATERALS**

1. Read through the following steps.

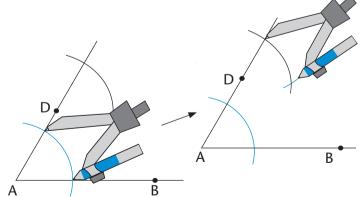
#### Step 1

From line segment AB, mark a point D. This point D will be on the line that will be parallel to AB. Draw a line from A through D.



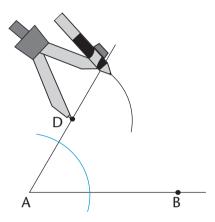
#### Step 3

Set the compass width to the distance between the two points where the first arc crosses AD and AB. From the point where the second arc crosses AD, draw a third arc to cross the second arc.



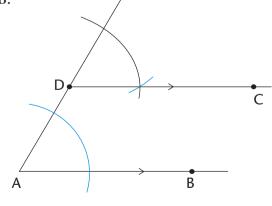
#### Step 2

Draw an arc from A that crosses AD and AB. Keep the same compass width and draw an arc from point D as shown.



#### Step 4

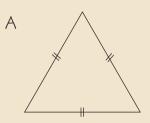
Draw a line from D through the point where the two arcs meet. DC is parallel to AB.

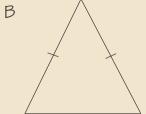


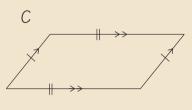
- 2. Practise drawing a parallelogram, square and rhombus in your exercise book.
- 3. Use a protractor to try to draw quadrilaterals with at least one set of parallel lines.

#### WORKSHEET

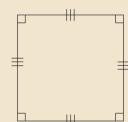
- 1. Do the following construction in your exercise book.
  - (a) Use a compass and ruler to construct equilateral  $\triangle$ ABC with sides 9 cm.
  - (b) Without using a protractor, bisect  $\hat{B}$ . Let the bisector intersect AC at point D.
  - (c) Use a protractor to measure  $\hat{ADB}$ . Write the measurement on the drawing.
- 2. Name the following types of triangles and quadrilaterals.

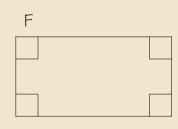






D





3. Which of the following quadrilaterals matches each description below? (There may be more than one answer for each.)

parallelogram; rectangle; rhombus; square; kite; trapezium

- (a) All sides are equal and all angles are equal. .....
- (b) Two pairs of adjacent sides are equal. .....
- (d) Opposite sides are parallel. ....
- (e) Opposite sides are parallel and all angles are equal.....
- (f) All sides are equal. ....

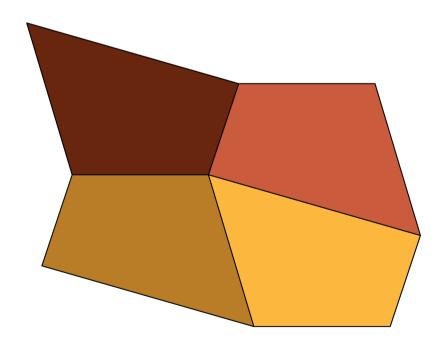
CONSTRUCTION OF GEOMETRIC FIGURES

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 190 2014/07/03 10:54:16 AM

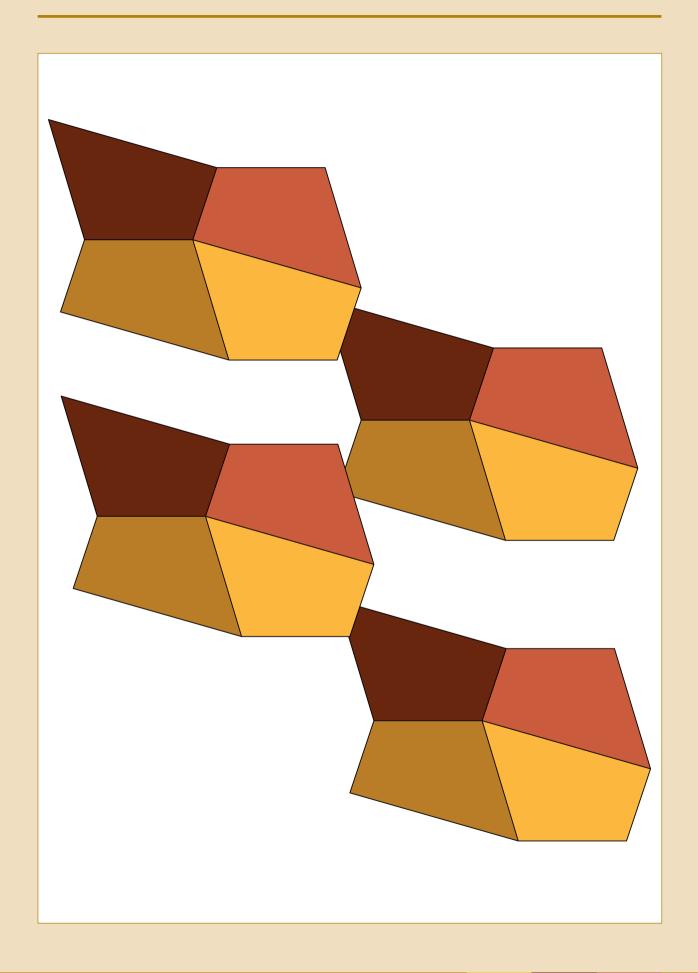
# CHAPTER 11 Geometry of 2D shapes

In this chapter, you will learn more about different kinds of triangles and quadrilaterals, and their properties. You will explore shapes that are congruent and shapes that are similar. You will also use your knowledge of the properties of 2D shapes in order to solve geometric problems.

| 11.1 | Types of triangles                           | 193 |
|------|--|-----|
| 11.2 | Unknown angles and sides of triangles        | 195 |
| 11.3 | Types of quadrilaterals and their properties | 200 |
| 11.4 | Unknown angles and sides of quadrilaterals   | 204 |
| 11.5 | Congruency                                   | 205 |
| 11.6 | Similarity                                   | 207 |



CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES 191



Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 192 2014/07/03 10:54:17 AM

# 11 Geometry of 2D shapes

## 11.1 Types of triangles

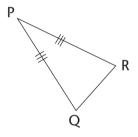
By now, you know that a triangle is a closed 2D shape with three straight sides. We can classify or name different types of triangles according to the lengths of their sides and according to the sizes of their angles.

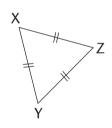
#### NAMING TRIANGLES ACCORDING TO THEIR SIDES

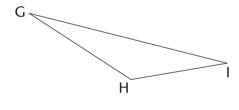
1. Match the name of each type of triangle with its correct description.

| Name of triangle     | Description of triangle                    |
|----------------------|--|
| Isosceles triangle   | All the sides of a triangle are equal.     |
| Scalene triangle     | None of the sides of a triangle are equal. |
| Equilateral triangle | Two sides of a triangle are equal.         |

2. Name each type of triangle by looking at its sides.

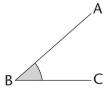






#### NAMING TRIANGLES ACCORDING TO THEIR ANGLES

Remember the following types of angles:

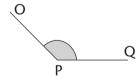


Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 193

Acute angle (< 90°)



Right angle (= 90°)

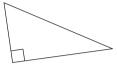


Obtuse angle (between 90° and 180°)

CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES

Study the following triangles; then answer the questions:







Acute triangle

Right-angled triangle

Obtuse triangle

- 1. Are all the angles of a triangle always equal? ......
- 2. When a triangle has an obtuse angle, it is called an .....triangle.
- 3. When a triangle has only acute angles, it is called an .....triangle.
- 4. When a triangle has an angle equal to ..... it is called a right-angled triangle.

#### **INVESTIGATING THE ANGLES AND SIDES OF TRIANGLES**

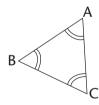
- - (b) Can a triangle have two right angles? Explain your answer.

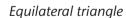
If you cannot work out the answers in 1(b) and (c), try to construct the triangles to find the answers.

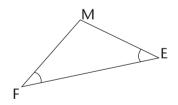
(c) Can a triangle have more than one obtuse angle? Explain your answer.

.....

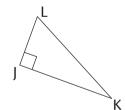
2. Look at the triangles below. The arcs show which angles are equal.







Isosceles triangle



Right-angled triangle

(a)  $\Delta ABC$  is an equilateral triangle. What do you notice about its angles?

(b)  $\Delta$ FEM is an isosceles triangle. What do you notice about its angles?

.....

- (c) ΔJKL is a right-angled triangle. Is its longest side opposite the 90° angle?......
- (d) Construct any three right-angled triangles on a sheet of paper. Is the longest side always opposite the 90° angle?

••••••••••••••••••••••••••

Properties of triangles:

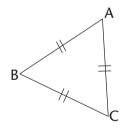
- The **sum of the interior angles** of a triangle is 180°.
- An **equilateral triangle** has all sides equal and each interior angle is equal to 60°.
- An **isosceles triangle** has two equal sides and the angles opposite the equal sides are equal.
- A **scalene triangle** has no sides equal.
- A **right-angled triangle** has a right angle (90°).
- An **obtuse triangle** has one obtuse angle (between 90° and 180°).
- An **acute triangle** has three acute angles (< 90°).

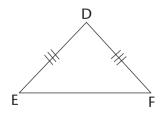
**Interior angles** are the angles inside a closed shape, not the angles outside of it.

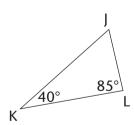
## 11.2 Unknown angles and sides of triangles

You can use what you know about triangles to obtain other information. When you work out new information, you must always give reasons for the statements you make.

Look at the examples below of working out unknown angles and sides when certain information is given. The reason for each statement is written in square brackets.







$$\hat{A} = \hat{B} = \hat{C} = 60^{\circ}$$

[Angles in an equilateral  $\Delta = 60^{\circ}$ ]

$$DE = DF$$

[Given]

$$\hat{E} = \hat{F}$$

[Angles opposite the equal sides of an isosceles  $\Delta$  are equal]

$$\hat{J} = 55^{\circ}$$

[The sum of the interior angles of a  $\Delta = 180^{\circ}$ ; so  $\hat{J} = 180^{\circ} - 40^{\circ} - 85^{\circ}$ ]

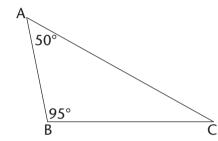
You can shorten the following reasons in the ways shown:

- Sum of interior angles ( $\angle$ s) of a triangle ( $\Delta$ ) = 180°: **Interior**  $\angle$ s of  $\Delta$
- Isosceles triangle has 2 sides and 2 angles equal: **Isosceles Δ**
- Equilateral triangle has 3 sides and 3 angles equal: **Equilateral Δ**
- Angles forming a straight line = 180°: **Straight line**

#### **WORKING OUT UNKNOWN ANGLES AND SIDES**

Find the sizes of unknown angles and sides in the following triangles. Always give reasons for every statement.

1. What is the size of  $\hat{C}$ ?



$$\hat{A} + \hat{B} + \hat{C} = \dots$$
 [Interior \(\neq s\) of a \(\Delta\)]

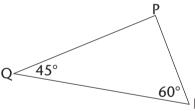
$$50^{\circ} + \dots + \widehat{C} = \dots$$

$$145^{\circ} + \widehat{C} = \dots$$

$$\widehat{C} = \dots - 145^{\circ}$$

$$\widehat{C} = \dots$$

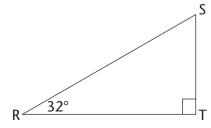
2. Determine the size of  $\hat{P}$ .



- 50 mm
- .....

.....

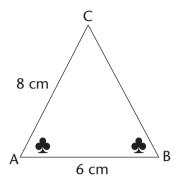
4. What is the size of  $\hat{S}$ ?



.....

5. (a) Find CB.

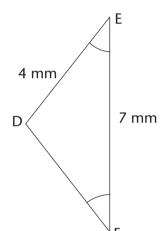
(b) Find  $\hat{C}$  if  $\hat{A} = 50^{\circ}$ .



| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | , |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |

6. (a) Find DF.

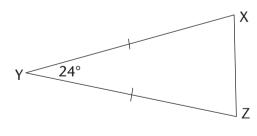
(b) Find  $\hat{E}$  if  $\hat{D} = 100^{\circ}$ .



| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |

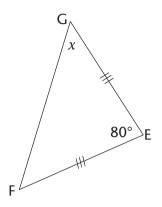
#### **WORKING OUT MORE UNKNOWN ANGLES AND SIDES**

1. Calculate the size of  $\hat{X}$  and  $\hat{Z}$ .

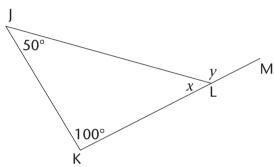




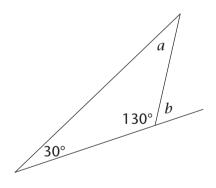
2. Calculate the size of x.



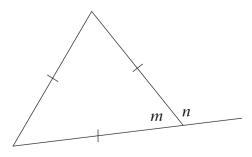
3. KLM is a straight line. Calculate the size of x and y.



4. Angle b and an angle with size 130° form a straight angle. Calculate the size of a and b.

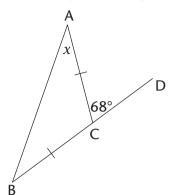


5. m and n form a straight angle. Calculate the size of m and n.



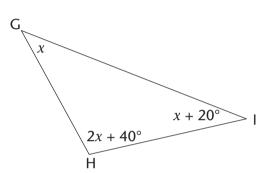
••••••

6. BCD is a straight line segment. Calculate the size of x.



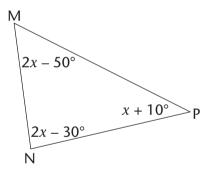
| Ī | Ī | • | • | Ť | • | Ī | Ī | • | Ī | • | • | Ī | Ť | Ī | Ī | · | • | Ī | • | • | Ī | • | • | Ī | • | • | Ī | • | • | • | • | • | Ī | • | Ī | • | • | Ī |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

7. Calculate the size of x and then the size of  $\hat{H}$ .



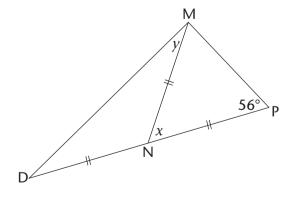
| • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • |                       |                 |
| • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • • |                 |
| • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • |                       |                 |
| • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • |                       |                 |
| • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • • | • • • • • • • • • •   | • • • • • • • • |

8. Calculate the size of  $\widehat{N}$ .



| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

9. DNP is a straight line. Calculate the size of x and of y.



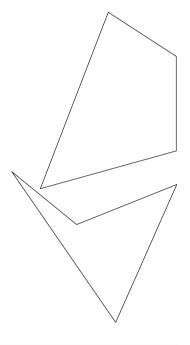
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

## 11.3 Types of quadrilaterals and their properties

A quadrilateral is a figure with four straight sides which meet at four vertices. In many quadrilaterals all the sides are of different lengths and all the angles are of different sizes.

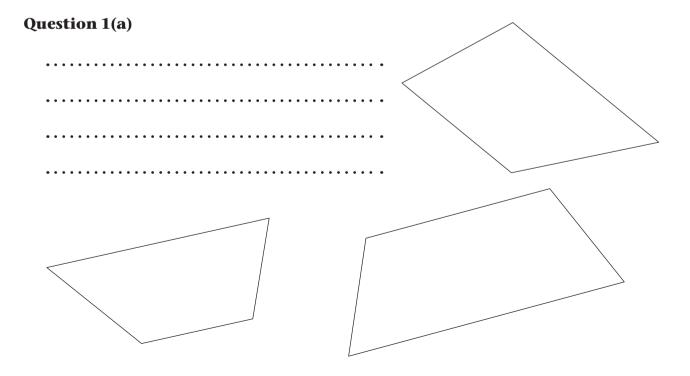
You have previously worked with these types of quadrilaterals, in which some sides have the same lengths, and some angles may be of the same size.

parallelograms rectangles kites rhombuses squares trapeziums



#### THE PROPERTIES OF DIFFERENT TYPES OF QUADRILATERALS

1. In each question below, different examples of a certain type of quadrilateral are given. In each case identify which kind of quadrilateral it is. Describe the properties of each type by making statements about the lengths and directions of the sides and the sizes of the angles of each type. You may have to take some measurements to be able to do this.



**200** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 2

| Question 1(b)                           |   |
|---|---|
| •••••                                   |   |
| ••••••                                  |   |
| ••••••                                  | ············                            |
| •••••                                   |   |
|   |   |
|   |   |
|   |   |
| Question 1(c)                           |   |
| •••••                                   |   |
| •••••                                   |   |
| •••••                                   |   |
| •••••                                   | ······                                  |
| ·····                                   | • |
|   |   |
|   |   |
|   |   |
| Question 1(d)                           |   |
|   |   |
| •••••                                   |   |
| • |   |
|   |   |
|   |   |
|   |   |
|   |   |

CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES **201** 

| estion 1(f) |
|-------------|
| estion 1(f) |
|             |

| 2. | Use your completed lists and the drawings in question 1 to determine if the following statements are true (T) or false (F).  |                             |   |
|----|--|-----------------------------|---|
|    | (a) A rectangle is a parallelogram   | (b) A square is a           | a parallelogram   |
|    | (c) A rhombus is a parallelogram   | (d) A kite is a pa          | arallelogram  |
|    | (e) A trapezium is a parallelogram   | (f) A square is a           | rhombus   |
|    | (g) A square is a rectangle  | (h) A square is a           | ı kite  |
|    | (i) A rhombus is a kite  | (j) A rectangle             | is a rhombus  |
|    | (k) A rectangle is a square  |                             |   |
|    | If a quadrilateral has <i>all</i> the properties of another quadrilateral, you can define it in terms of the other quadrilateral, as you have found above.   |                             | A <b>convention</b> is something (such as a definition or method) that most people agree on, accept and follow. |
| 3. | <ul> <li>Here are some conventional definitions of quadrilaterals:</li> <li>A parallelogram is a quadrilateral with two opposite sides parallel.</li> <li>A rectangle is a parallelogram that has all four angles equal to 90°.</li> <li>A rhombus is a parallelogram with all four sides equal.</li> <li>A square is a rectangle with all four sides equal.</li> <li>A trapezium is a quadrilateral with one pair of opposite sides parallel.</li> <li>A kite is a quadrilateral with two pairs of adjacent sides equal.</li> </ul> |                             |   |
|    | Write down other definitions that work for these quadrilaterals.  (a) Rectangle:  (b) Square:  (c) Rhombus:  (d) Kite:   |                             |   |
|    |  |                             |   |
|    |  |                             |   |
|    |  |                             |   |
|    | (e) Trapezium:   |                             |   |
|    | •••••  | • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | •   |

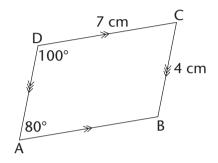
Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 203 2014/07/03 10:54:21 AM

## 11.4 Unknown angles and sides of quadrilaterals

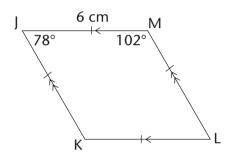
#### FINDING UNKNOWN ANGLES AND SIDES

Find the length of all the **unknown sides** and **angles** in the following quadrilaterals. Give reasons to justify your statements. (Also recall that the sum of the angles of a quadrilateral is 360°.)

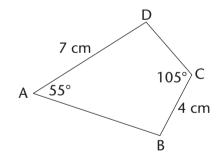
1.



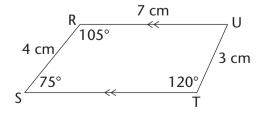
2.



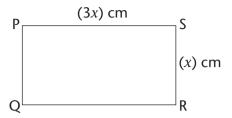
3. ABCD is a kite.



4. The perimeter of RSTU is 23 cm.



5. PQRS is a rectangle and has a perimeter of 40 cm.

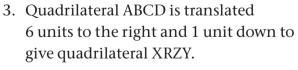


## 11.5 Congruency

#### WHAT IS CONGRUENCY?

 ΔABC is reflected in the vertical line (mirror) to give ΔKLM.
 Are the sizes and shapes of the two triangles exactly the same?

2.  $\Delta$ MON is rotated 90° around point F to give you  $\Delta$ TUE. Are the sizes and shapes of  $\Delta$ MON and  $\Delta$ TUE exactly the same?



Are ABCD and XRZY exactly the same?

B C L M

Mirror

T E

M

O F U

A 6 units right

D X 1 unit down

Y

C

B

R

CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES 205

In the previous activity, each of the figures was transformed (reflected, rotated or translated) to produce a second figure. The second figure in each pair has **the same angles, side lengths, size and area** as the first figure. The second figure is thus an **accurate copy** of the first figure.

When one figure is an image of another figure, we say that the two figures are **congruent**. The symbol for congruent is: ≡

The word **congruent** comes from the Latin word *congruere*, which means "to agree". Figures are congruent if they match up perfectly when laid on top of each other.

#### Notation of congruent figures

When we name shapes that are congruent, we name them so that the matching, or corresponding, angles are in the same order. For example, in  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle KLM$  on the previous page:

 $\hat{A}$  is congruent to (matches and is equal to)  $\hat{K}$ .

 $\hat{B}$  is congruent to  $\hat{M}$ .

 $\hat{C}$  is congruent to  $\hat{L}$ .

We therefore use this notation:  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle KML$ .

We cannot assume that, when the angles of polygons are equal, the polygons are congruent. You will learn about the conditions of congruence in Grade 9.

Similarly for the other pairs of figures on the previous page:

 $\Delta$ MON  $\equiv$   $\Delta$ ETU and  $\Delta$ BCD  $\equiv$  XRZY.

The notation of congruent figures also shows which sides of the two figures correspond and are equal. For example,  $\Delta ABC \equiv \Delta KML$  shows that:

$$AB = KM$$
,  $BC = ML$  and  $AC = KL$ 

The incorrect notation  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle KLM$  will show the following incorrect information:

$$\hat{B} = \hat{L}$$
,  $\hat{C} = \widehat{M}$ ,  $AB = KL$ , and  $AC = KM$ .

#### **IDENTIFYING CONGRUENT ANGLES AND SIDES**

Write down which angles and sides are equal between each pair of congruent figures.

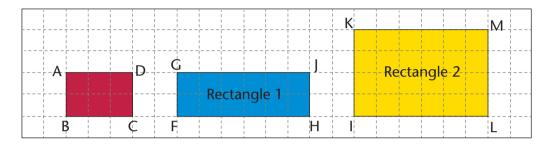
| 1. $\Delta PQR \equiv \Delta UCT$ | 2. $\Delta KLM \equiv \Delta UWC$ |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|                                   |                                   |
| 3. $\Delta GHI \equiv \Delta QRT$ | 4. $\Delta KJL \equiv \Delta POQ$ |
|                                   |                                   |
|                                   |                                   |

## 11.6 Similarity

In Grade 7, you learnt that two figures are **similar** when they have the **same shape** (their angles are equal) but they may be **different sizes**. The sides of one figure are proportionally longer or shorter than the sides of the other figure; that is, the length of each side is multiplied or divided by the same number. We say that one figure is an enlargement or a reduction of the other figure.

#### **CHECKING FOR SIMILARITY**

1. Look at the rectangles below and answer the questions that follow.



(a) Look at rectangle 1 and ABCD:

How many times is FH longer than BC? .....

How many times is GF longer than AB? .....

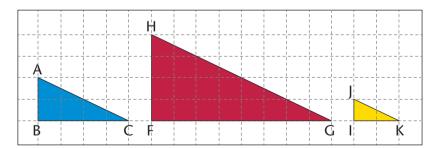
(b) Look at rectangle 2 and ABCD:

How many times is IL longer than BC? .....

How many times is LM longer than CD? .....

(c) Is rectangle 1 or rectangle 2 an enlargement of rectangle ABCD? Explain your answer.

2. Look at the triangles below and answer the questions that follow.



- (a) How many times is:
  - FG longer than BC? ..... H
- HF longer than AB? ......
  - HG longer than AC? ......
- IK shorter than BC? ......
- JI shorter than AB? ......
- JK shorter than AC? .....
- (b) Is  $\Delta$ HFG an enlargement of  $\Delta$ ABC? Explain your answer.

.....

(c) Is  $\Delta$ JIK a reduction of  $\Delta$ ABC? Explain your answer.

•••••

In the previous activity, rectangle KILM is an enlargement of rectangle ABCD. Therefore, ABCD is similar to KILM. The symbol for 'is similar to' is: |||. So we write: ABCD ||| KILM.

The triangles on the previous page are also similar.  $\Delta$ HFG is an enlargement of  $\Delta$ ABC and  $\Delta$ JIK is a reduction of  $\Delta$ ABC.

In  $\triangle$ ABC and  $\triangle$ HFG,  $\hat{A} = \hat{H}$ ,  $\hat{B} = \hat{F}$  and  $\hat{C} = \hat{G}$ . We therefore write it like this:  $\triangle$ ABC |||  $\triangle$ HFG.

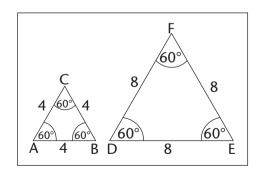
In the same way,  $\triangle ABC \parallel \triangle JIK$ .

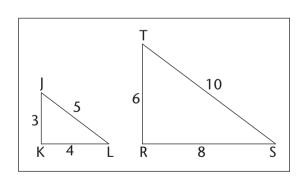
**Similar figures** are figures that have the same angles (same shape) but are not necessarily the same size.

When you enlarge or reduce a polygon, you need to enlarge or reduce all its sides proportionally, or by the same ratio. This means that you multiply or divide each length by the same number.

#### **USING PROPERTIES OF SIMILAR AND CONGRUENT FIGURES**

1. Are the triangles in each pair similar or congruent? Give a reason for each answer.



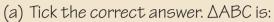


••••••••••••••••••••••••

| 2. Is ΔRTU     ΔEFG? Give a reason for yo  | ur answer. E                            |
|--|---|
| •••••  |   |
| •••••  |   |
|  |   |
| •••••  |   |
| ••••••   | R 5                                     |
| •  | T 4 U F 5                               |
| 3. $\Delta PQR \parallel \Delta XYZ$ . Determine the length  |   |
| (ZY is twice as long as QR.)   |   |
|  | , <b>x</b>                              |
| P  | ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• |
| 8 cm   | •••••••••••                             |
| Q 4 cm R Z 8 cm Y  | •••••••••••                             |
|  | ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• |
| <ul><li>4. Are the following statements true or f</li><li>(a) Figures that are congruent are sir</li></ul> |   |
| •••••  |   |
| (b) Figures that are similar are congr   | uent.                                   |
| •••••  |   |
| (c) All rectangles are similar.  | • |
|  |   |
| (d) All squares are similar.   | • |
| ••••••   | • |
|  |   |

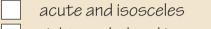
#### WORKSHEET

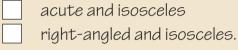
1. Study the triangles below and answer the following questions:

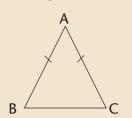


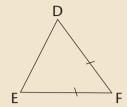












(b) If AB = 40 mm, what is the length of AC?.....

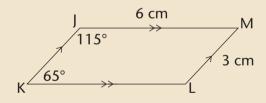
(c) If 
$$\hat{B} = 80^{\circ}$$
, what is the size of  $\hat{C}$  and of  $\hat{A}$ ?.....

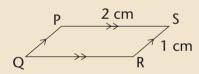
(d)  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle FDE$ . Name all the sides in the two triangles that are equal to AB.

(e) Name the side that is equal to DE.

(f) If  $\hat{F}$  is 40°, what is the size of  $\hat{B}$ ?

2. Look at figures JKLM and PQRS. (Give reasons for your answers below.)





(a) What type of quadrilateral is JKLM?

(b) Is JKLM ||| PQRS?

(c) What is the size of L?

(d) What is the size of Ŝ?

(e) What is the length of KL?

**GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES** 

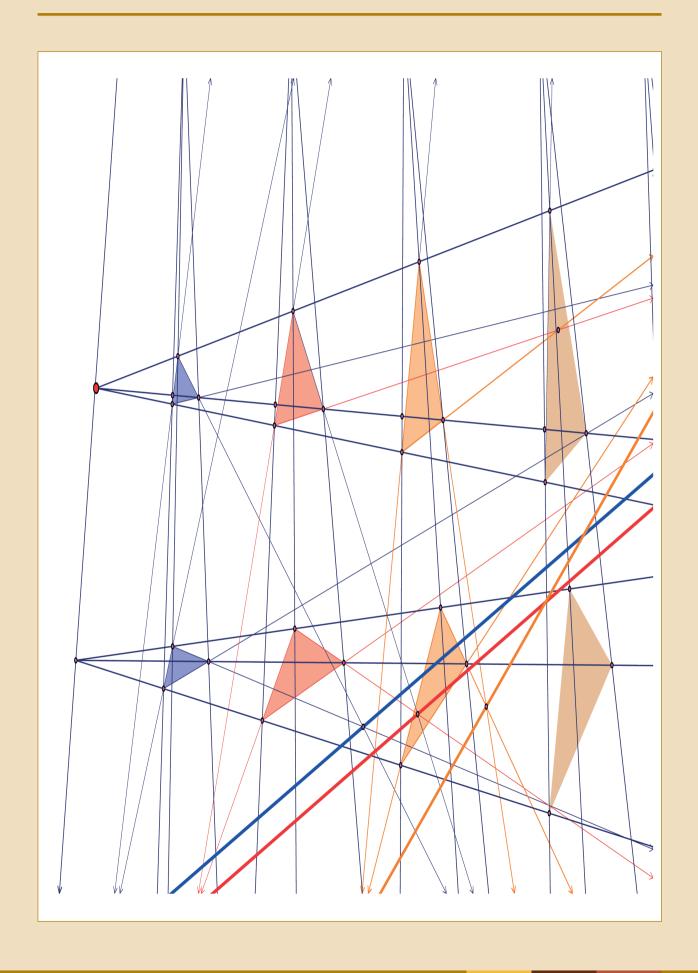
Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 210 2014/07/03 10:54:24 AM

# CHAPTER 12 Geometry of straight lines

In this chapter, you will explore the relationships between pairs of angles that are created when straight lines intersect (meet or cross). You will examine the pairs of angles that are formed by perpendicular lines, by any two intersecting lines, and by a third line that cuts two parallel lines. You will come to understand what is meant by vertically opposite angles, corresponding angles, alternate angles and co-interior angles. You will be able to identify different angle pairs, and then use your knowledge to help you work out unknown angles in geometric figures.

| 12.1 | Angles on a straight line                   | 213 |
|------|---|-----|
| 12.2 | Vertically opposite angles                  | 216 |
| 12.3 | Lines intersected by a transversal          | 219 |
| 12.4 | Parallel lines intersected by a transversal | 222 |
| 12.5 | Finding unknown angles on parallel lines    | 224 |
| 12.6 | Solving more geometric problems             | 227 |

CHAPTER 12: GEOMETRY OF STRAIGHT LINES 211



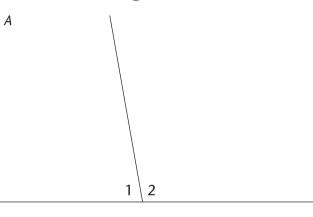
## 12 Geometry of straight lines

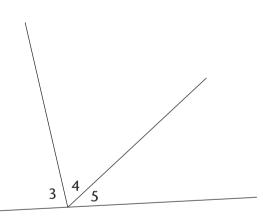
## 12.1 Angles on a straight line

#### **SUM OF ANGLES ON A STRAIGHT LINE**

In the figures below, each angle is given a label from 1 to 5.

1. Use a protractor to measure the sizes of all the angles in each figure. Write your answers on each figure.





2. Use your answers to fill in the angle sizes below.

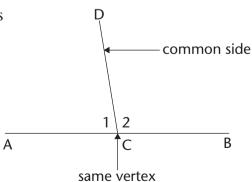
(a) 
$$\hat{1} + \hat{2} = \dots$$

(b) 
$$\hat{3} + \hat{4} + \hat{5} = \dots$$

The sum of angles that are formed on a straight line is equal to  $180^{\circ}$ . (We can shorten this property as:  $\angle$ s on a straight line.)

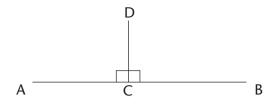
Two angles whose sizes add up to 180° are also called **supplementary** angles, for example  $\hat{1} + \hat{2}$ .

Angles that share a vertex and a common side are said to be **adjacent**. So  $\hat{1} + \hat{2}$  are therefore also called **supplementary adjacent angles**.



When two lines are perpendicular, their adjacent supplementary angles are each equal to 90°.

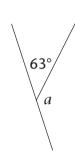
In the drawing alongside,  $D\widehat{C}A$  and  $D\widehat{C}B$  are adjacent supplementary angles because they are next to each other (adjacent) and they add up to  $180^{\circ}$  (supplementary).



#### FINDING UNKNOWN ANGLES ON STRAIGHT LINES

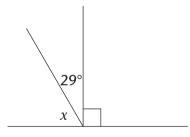
Work out the sizes of the unknown angles below. Build an equation each time as you solve these geometric problems. Always give a reason for every statement you make.

1. Calculate the size of *a*.

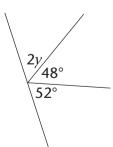


$$a + 63^{\circ} = \dots$$
 [\(\angle \text{s on a straight line}\)]
$$a = \dots - 63^{\circ}$$

2. Calculate the size of *x*.



3. Calculate the size of y.

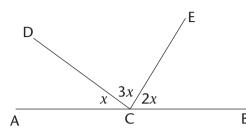


#### FINDING MORE UNKNOWN ANGLES ON STRAIGHT LINES

1. Calculate the size of:



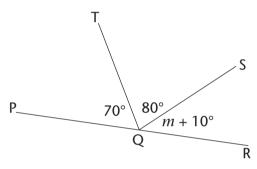




2. Calculate the size of:

(a) *m* 

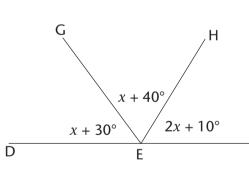




3. Calculate the size of:

(a) *x* 

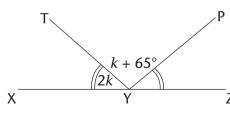
(b) HÊF



4. Calculate the size of:

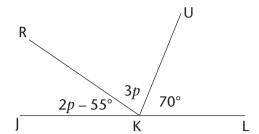
(a) *k* 

(b) TŶP



<u>7</u> .....

- 5. Calculate the size of:
  - (a) *p*
  - (b) JRR

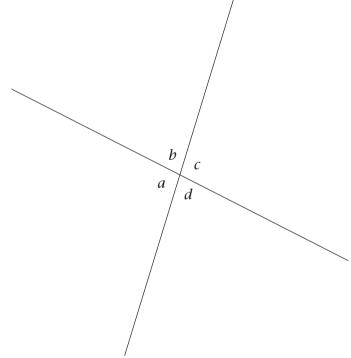


| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| • |   | • | • |   | • | • | • |   |   |   | • | • | • | • |   |   | • | • | • | • |   |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   |  |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |

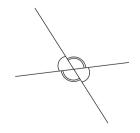
## 12.2 Vertically opposite angles

### WHAT ARE VERTICALLY OPPOSITE ANGLES?

 Use a protractor to measure the sizes of all the angles in the figure.
 Write your answers on the figure.



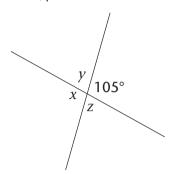
- 2. Notice which angles are equal and how these equal angles are formed.
  - **Vertically opposite angles (vert. opp.** ∠s) are the angles opposite each other when two lines intersect. Vertically opposite angles are **always equal**.



#### **FINDING UNKNOWN ANGLES**

Calculate the sizes of the unknown angles in the following figures. Always give a reason for every statement you make.

1. Calculate x, y and z.



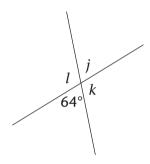
$$x = \dots^{\circ}$$
 [vert. opp.  $\angle$ s]

$$y + 105^{\circ} = \dots^{\circ}$$
 [\(\angle \text{s on a straight line}\)]
$$y = \dots - 105^{\circ}$$

$$= \dots$$

$$z = \dots$$
 [vert. opp.  $\angle$ s]

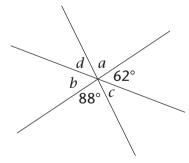
2. Calculate j, k and l.



| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |

3. Calculate a, b, c and d.



| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |

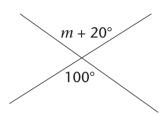
•••••••••••

.....

#### **EQUATIONS USING VERTICALLY OPPOSITE ANGLES**

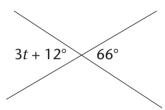
Vertically opposite angles are always equal. We can use this property to build an equation. Then we solve the equation to find the value of the unknown variable.

1. Calculate the value of *m*.

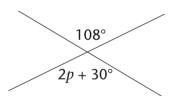


$$m + 20^{\circ} = 100^{\circ}$$
 [vert. opp.  $\angle$ s]  
 $m = 100^{\circ} - 20^{\circ}$   
 $= \dots$ 

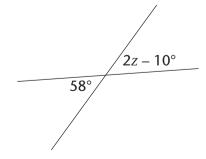
2. Calculate the value of *t*.



3. Calculate the value of p.



4. Calculate the value of *z*.

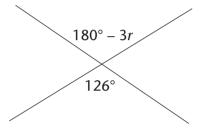


| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
| • |   |   |   | • | • |   |   |   |   | • | • |   |   |   | • | • | • |   |   |   | • | • | • |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |  |
| • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| _ |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |  |

5. Calculate the value of *y*.

| 102° – 2 <i>y</i> | 78° |
|-------------------|-----|
|                   |     |

6. Calculate the value of r.



| , | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| , | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
| , | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |
|   |   | • | • | • |   |   |   |   | • | • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   | • | • | • |   |   |   | • |   |   | • |   |

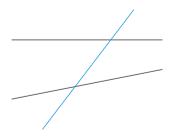
| • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| • |   | • | • |   | • | • | • | • |   |   |   |   | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | • | • | • |   |   | • | • |   | • |  |

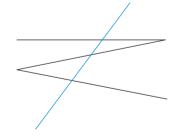
## 12.3 Lines intersected by a transversal

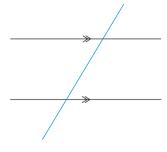
#### PAIRS OF ANGLES FORMED BY A TRANSVERSAL

A **transversal** is a line that crosses at least two other lines.

The blue line is the transversal







When a transversal intersects two lines, we can compare the sets of angles on the two lines by looking at their positions.

The angles that lie on the same side of the transversal and are in matching positions are called **corresponding angles** (**corr.** ∠**s**). In the figure, these are corresponding angles: • *a* and *e* • *b* and *f*  d and h • *c* and *g*. 1. In the figure, a and e are both left of the transversal and above a line. Write down the location of the following corresponding angles. The first one is done for you. *b* and *f*: Right of the transversal and above the lines. d and h: c and g: **Alternate angles** (alt. ∠s) lie on opposite sides of the transversal, but are not adjacent or vertically opposite. When the alternate angles lie between the two lines, they are called **alternate interior angles**. In the figure, these are alternate interior angles: • *d* and *f* • c and e. When the alternate angles lie outside of the two lines, they are called **alternate** exterior angles. In the figure, these are alternate exterior angles: • *a* and *g* • *b* and *h*. 2. Write down the location of the following alternate angles: 

**220** MATHEMATICS GRADE 8: TERM 2

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 220 2014/07/03 10:54:28 AM

**Co-interior angles (co-int.**  $\angle$ **s)** lie on the same side of the transversal and between the two lines. In the figure, these are co-interior angles:



• *d* and *e*.

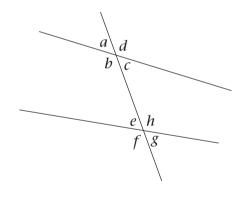
|   | a/b |
|---|-----|
|   | d/c |
| h | 8   |
|   |     |

3. Write down the location of the following co-interior angles:

| d and e:                | • • • | •••   | •••   | • • | • • • | • • | • •   | • • |     |     | • |     | ••  | • • | • • |     | • • |     | • • | • | • • |     | • | • • |     | • | • • | • |     |     | • | • • | • • |     |     | • |
|-------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---|-----|-----|---|-----|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|---|
| • • • • • •             | • • • | • • • | • • • | • • | • • • | • • | • •   | • • | • • | • • | • | • • | • • | • • | •   | • • | • • | • • | • • | • | • • | • • | • | • • | • • |   |     | • | • • | • • | • | • • | •   | • • | • • | • |
| <i>c</i> and <i>f</i> : | • • • |       |       |     |       | • • | • • • | • • | • • |     |   | • • | • • | • • |     | •   |     | ••  |     | • |     | • • | • |     |     | • |     | • |     |     | • | • • | •   | •   |     | • |
|                         |       |       |       |     |       |     |       |     |     |     |   |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |   |     |     |   |     |     |   |     |   |     |     |   |     |     |     |     |   |

#### **IDENTIFYING TYPES OF ANGLES**

Two lines are intersected by a transversal as shown below.



Write down the following pairs of angles:

| 1. | two pairs of corresponding angles: | • |
|----|------------------------------------|---|
|----|------------------------------------|---|

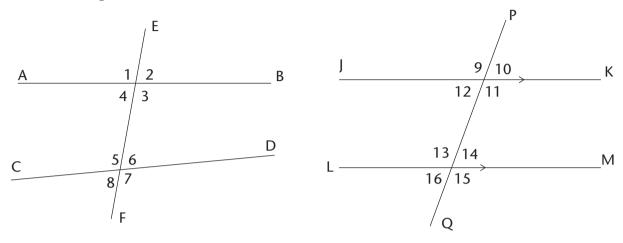
| 3  | two pairs of alternate exterior angles: |   |
|----|---|---|
| J. | two pairs of afternate exterior arigies | Þ |

| 4. | two pairs of co-interior angles: |  |
|----|----------------------------------|--|
|----|----------------------------------|--|

## 12.4 Parallel lines intersected by a transversal

#### **INVESTIGATING ANGLE SIZES**

In the figure below left, EF is a transversal to AB and CD. In the figure below right, PQ is a transversal to parallel lines JK and LM.



- 1. Use a protractor to measure the sizes of all the angles in each figure. Write the measurements on the figures.
- 2. Use your measurements to complete the following table.

| Angles       | When two lines are not parallel                                       | When two lines are parallel   |
|--------------|---|---|
| Corr. ∠s     | î = ; ŝ =   | 9 =; <del>1</del> 3 =   |
|              | $\hat{4} = \ldots : \hat{8} = \ldots$                                 | $\widehat{12} = \ldots; \widehat{16} = \ldots$                              |
|              | $\hat{2} = \ldots; \hat{6} = \ldots$                                  | $\widehat{10} = \ldots; \widehat{14} = \ldots$                              |
|              | $\hat{3} = \ldots; \hat{7} = \ldots$                                  | $\widehat{11} = \dots; \widehat{15} = \dots$                                |
| Alt. int. ∠s | $\hat{4} = \ldots$ ; $\hat{6} = \ldots$                               | $\widehat{12} = \ldots; \widehat{14} = \ldots$                              |
|              | $\hat{3} = \ldots; \hat{5} = \ldots$                                  | $\widehat{11} = \dots; \widehat{13} = \dots$                                |
| Alt. ext. ∠s | $\hat{1} = \dots; \hat{7} = \dots$ $\hat{2} = \dots; \hat{8} = \dots$ | $\hat{9} = \dots; \hat{15} = \dots$ $\hat{10} = \dots; \hat{16} = \dots$    |
| Co-int. ∠s   | $\hat{4} + \hat{5} = \dots$ $\hat{3} + \hat{6} = \dots$               | $\widehat{12} + \widehat{13} = \dots$ $\widehat{11} + \widehat{14} = \dots$ |

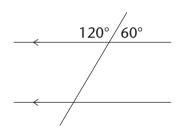
3. Look at your completed table in question 2. What do you notice about the angles formed when a transversal intersects parallel lines?

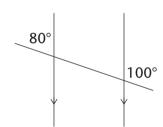
When lines are parallel:

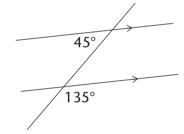
- corresponding angles are equal
- alternate interior angles are equal
- alternate exterior angles are equal
- co-interior angles add up to 180°.

#### **IDENTIFYING ANGLES ON PARALLEL LINES**

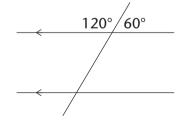
1. Fill in the corresponding angles to those given.

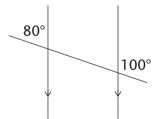


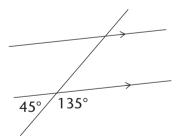




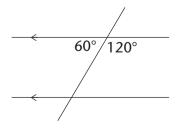
2. Fill in the alternate exterior angles.

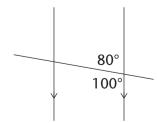


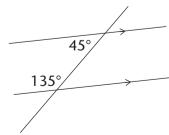




- 3. (a) Fill in the alternate interior angles.
  - $(b) \quad \text{Circle the two pairs of co-interior angles in each figure.}$

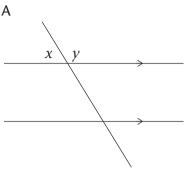


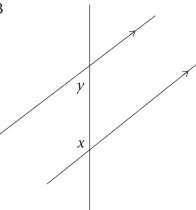




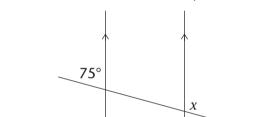
4. (a) Without measuring, fill in all the angles in the following figures that are equal to x and y.

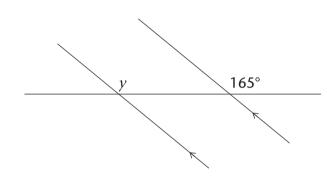
(b) Explain your reasons for each *x* and *y* that you filled in to your partner.





5. Give the value of *x* and *y* below.





## 12.5 Finding unknown angles on parallel lines

#### **WORKING OUT UNKNOWN ANGLES**

Work out the sizes of the unknown angles. Give reasons for your answers. (The first one has been done as an example.)

1. Find the sizes of x, y and z.

$$A \xrightarrow{/E} y \xrightarrow{74^{\circ}/Z} E$$

$$C \xrightarrow{x} D$$

 $x = 74^{\circ}$ 

$$y = 74^{\circ}$$
or  $y = 74^{\circ}$ 

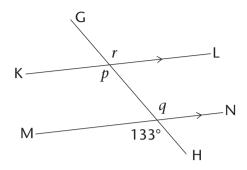
[corr. 
$$\angle$$
 with  $x$ ; AB || CD]  
[vert. opp.  $\angle$  with given 74°]

$$z = 106^{\circ}$$

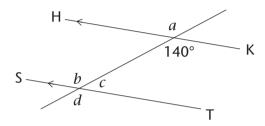
or 
$$z = 106^{\circ}$$

[co-int. 
$$\angle$$
 with  $x$ ; AB || CD]

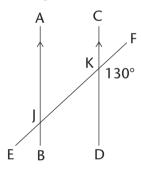
2. Work out the sizes of p, q and r.



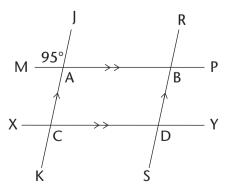
3. Find the sizes of a, b, c and d.



4. Find the sizes of all the angles in this figure.

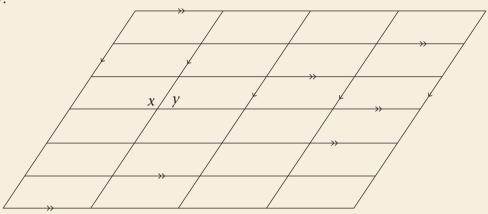


5. Find the sizes of all the angles. (Can you see two transversals and two sets of parallel lines?)



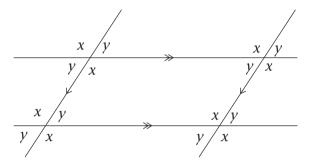
#### **EXTENSION**

Two angles in the following diagram are given as x and y. Fill in all the angles that are equal to x and y.



#### **SUM OF THE ANGLES IN A QUADRILATERAL**

The diagram below is a section of the previous diagram.



1. What kind of quadrilateral is in the diagram? Give a reason for your answer.

•••••

2. Look at the top left intersection. Complete the following equation:

Angles around a point =  $360^{\circ}$ 

$$\therefore x + y + \dots + 360^{\circ}$$

3. Look at the interior angles of the quadrilateral. Complete the following equations:

Sum of angles in the quadrilateral =  $x + y + \dots + \dots$ 

From question 2:  $x + y + \dots = 360^{\circ}$ 

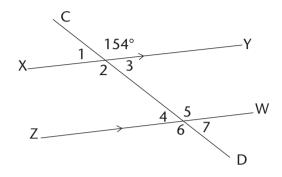
∴ Sum of angles in a quadrilateral = . . . . °

Can you think of another way to use the diagram above to work out the sum of the angles in a quadrilateral?

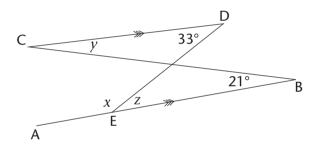
## 12.6 Solving more geometric problems

#### **ANGLE RELATIONSHIPS ON PARALLEL LINES**

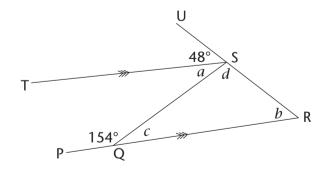
1. Calculate the sizes of  $\hat{1}$  to  $\hat{7}$ .



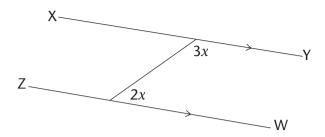
2. Calculate the sizes of x, y and z.



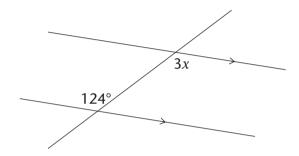
3. Calculate the sizes of a, b, c and d.



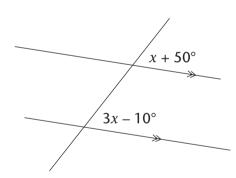
4. Calculate the size of x.



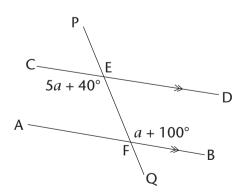
5. Calculate the size of x.



6. Calculate the size of x.

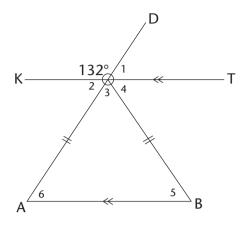


7. Calculate the sizes of a and  $C\hat{E}P$ .

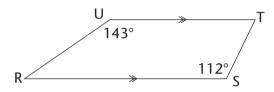


#### **INCLUDING PROPERTIES OF TRIANGLES AND QUADRILATERALS**

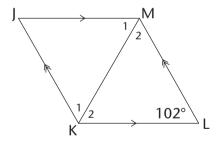
1. Calculate the sizes of  $\hat{1}$  to  $\hat{6}$ .



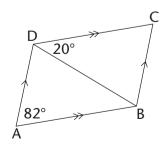
2. RSTU is a trapezium. Calculate the sizes of  $\, \hat{T} \,$  and  $\, \hat{R} .$ 



3. JKLM is a rhombus. Calculate the sizes of J  $\widehat{M}$  L,  $\ \widehat{M}_2$  and  $\ \widehat{K}_1.$ 

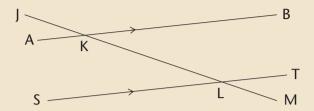


4. ABCD is a parallelogram. Calculate the sizes of A $\hat{D}$ B, A $\hat{B}$ D,  $\hat{C}$  and D $\hat{B}$ C.



#### WORKSHEET

1. Look at the drawing below. Name the items listed alongside.



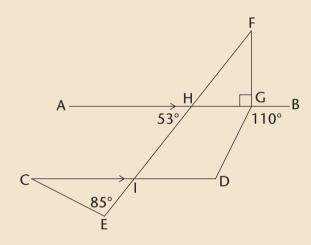
(a) a pair of vertically opposite angles

(b) a pair of corresponding angles

(c) a pair of alternate interior angles

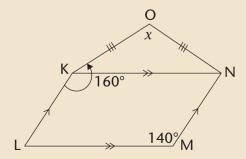
(d) a pair of co-interior angles

2. In the diagram, AB II CD. Calculate the sizes of  $\hat{FHG}$ ,  $\hat{F}$ ,  $\hat{C}$  and  $\hat{D}$ . Give reasons for your answers.



3. In the diagram, OK = ON,  $KN \parallel LM$ ,  $KL \parallel MN$  and  $L\hat{K}O = 160^{\circ}$ .

Calculate the value of x. Give reasons for your answers.



Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 230 2014/07/03 10:54:33 AM

## TERM 2 Revision and assessment

| Re | vision                            | 232 |
|----|-----------------------------------|-----|
| •  | Algebraic expressions 2           | 232 |
|    | Algebraic equations 2             |     |
|    | Construction of geometric figures |     |
|    | Geometry of 2D shapes             |     |
|    | Geometry of straight lines        |     |
|    | sessment                          |     |

## Revision

Show all your steps in your working.

#### **ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS 2**

| 1.         | Simp  | lifv |
|------------|-------|------|
| <b>-</b> • | OIIII | LILY |

(a) 
$$x^2 + x^2$$

(b)  $m + m \times m + m$ 

.....

(c)  $5ab - 7a^2 - 2a^2 + 11ba$ 

(d)  $(3ac^2)(-4a^2b)$ 

(e)  $(-4a^2b^3)^3$ 

•••••

 $(f) \quad \left(\frac{-6x^2yz^4}{3xyz}\right)^2$ 

••••••

(g)  $\sqrt{\frac{100x^4}{81y^{64}}}$ 

.....

(h)  $\sqrt{16c^2 + 9c^2}$ 

.....

| (i) $(2x + 3x)^3$                       |
|---|
| ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• |
| (j) $3x^2(4x^3-5)$                      |
| ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• |
| (k) $(4a-7a)(a^2-2a-5)$                 |
|   |
| (1) $\frac{9c^2de^3}{3c^2d^2e^2f}$      |
| (m) $\frac{6b^2 - 3b^2}{2b^2}$          |
|   |
| (n) $\frac{10x^2 - 5x + 1}{5}$          |
| (o) $\frac{14x - 21x^2}{7x^2}$          |
| ••••••                                  |
| ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• |
| ••••••••••••••••••                      |
| Simplify the following expressions:     |
| (a) $3(a+2b)-4(b-2a)$                   |
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••               |
| (b) $3 - 2(5x^2 + 6x - 2)$              |
| ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• |
|   |

2.

|    | (c) $2x(x^2-x+1)-3(4-x)$   |
|----|--|
|    |  |
|    |  |
|    | (d) $(2a+b-4c)-(5a+b-c)$   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (e) $a\{2a^2[4+2(3a+1)]-a\}$   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | ••••••   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
| 3. | If $a = 0$ , $b = -2$ , and $c = 3$ , determine the value of the following without using a calculator. Show all working:  (a) $b^2c$ |
|    |  |
|    | (b) $2b - b(ab - 5bc)$   |
|    |  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (c) $\frac{2b-c+10a}{3c^2}$  |
|    |  |
|    | ••••••   |
|    |  |
| 4. | If $y = -2$ , find the value of $2y^3 - 4y + 3$  |
|    |  |
|    |  |

### **ALGEBRAIC EQUATIONS 2**

| 1. | Solve the following equations:<br>(a) $-x = -7$  |
|----|--|
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (b) $2x = 24$  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (c) $3x - 6 = 0$   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | (d) $2x + 5 = 3$   |
|    | ••••••   |
|    | (e) $3(x-4) = -3$  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | ••••••••••••••••••••••••   |
|    | (f) $4(2x-1) = 5(x-2)$   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    |  |
| 2. | Sello is <i>x</i> years old. Thlapo is 4 years older than Sello. The sum of their ages is 32.  (a) Write this information in an equation using <i>x</i> as the variable. |
|    |  |
|    | (b) Solve the equation to find Thlapo's age.   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | ••••••   |
|    | ***************************************  |

| 3. | The length of a rectangle is $(2x + 8)$ cm and the width is 2 cm. The area of the rectangle is $12 \text{ cm}^2$ .   |
|----|--|
|    | (a) Write this information in an equation using <i>x</i> as the variable.  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••  |
|    | (b) Solve the equation to determine the value of <i>x</i> .  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••  |
|    | (c) How long is the rectangle?   |
|    |  |
|    |  |
| 4. | The area of a rectangle is $(8x^2 + 2x)$ cm <sup>2</sup> , and the length is $2x$ cm. Determine the width of the rectangle in terms of $x$ , in its simplest form. |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••  |
|    |  |

#### **CONSTRUCTION OF GEOMETRIC FIGURES**

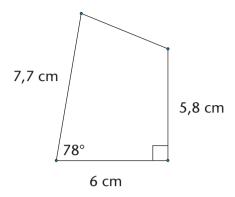
Do not erase any construction arcs in these questions.

1. (a) Construct  $D\hat{E}F = 56^{\circ}$  with your ruler, pencil, and a protractor. Label the angle correctly.

(b) Bisect DÊF using only a compass, ruler, and pencil (no protractor).

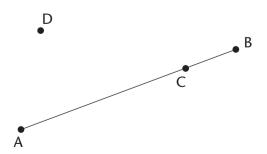
 Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb
 236
 2014/07/03
 10:54:35 AM

2. Here is a rough sketch of a quadrilateral (NOT drawn to scale):



Construct the quadrilateral accurately and full size below.

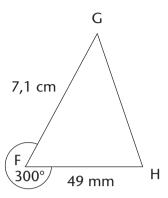
- 3. Using only a compass, ruler and pencil, construct:
  - (a) A line through C perpendicular to AB
  - (b) A line through D perpendicular to AB



- 4. Construct and label the following triangles and quadrilaterals:
  - (a) Triangle ABC, where AB = 8 cm; BC = 5.5 cm and AC = 4.9 cm

(b) Rhombus GHJK, where GH = 6 cm and  $\hat{G}$  = 50°

5. Here is a rough sketch of triangle FGH (NOT drawn to scale):



Using a ruler, pencil, and protractor, construct and label the triangle accurately.

6. Construct an angle of 120° without using a protractor.

#### **GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES**

|    | Equilateral triangle                                    | Isosceles triangle   | Right-angled triangle      |
|----|---|--|----------------------------|
| 4. | Write definitions of the trian                          |  | B. I                       |
|    | ••••••  |  |                            |
|    |   |  |                            |
|    | •••••   |  |                            |
|    | •                 | •                            |                            |
|    |   |  |                            |
| 3. | If triangle MNP has $\widehat{M} = 40^{\circ}$          | and $\widehat{N} = 90^{\circ}$ , what is the size                  | of P̂?                     |
|    | •                 |  |                            |
|    |   |  |                            |
|    | •••••   |  |                            |
|    | (b) In a quadrilateral, one of remaining two angles are | f the angles is a right angle, a<br>e equal to each other, what is |                            |
|    |   |  |                            |
|    | angle.  |  |                            |
| 2. | (a) In a triangle, two of the a                         | angles are 35° and 63°. Calcu                                      | late the size of the third |
|    | •••••   |  |                            |
|    | True or false: all equilateral trequal 60°.             | riangles, no matter what size                                      | they are, have angles that |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 240 2014/07/03 10:54:36 AM

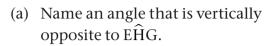
| 5. | <ul><li>The following list gives the properties of three quadrilaterals, A, B and C.</li><li>(a) Give the special names of each of shapes A, B and C.</li><li>Quadrilateral A: The opposite sides are equal and parallel.</li></ul> |
|----|---|
|    | Quadrilateral B: The adjacent sides are equal, while the opposite sides are not equal   |
|    | Quadrilateral C: All of the angles are right angles.  |
|    | (b) What property must Quadrilateral A also have to make it a rhombus?  |
|    | (c) What property must Quadrilateral A also have to make it a rectangle?  |
|    |   |
| 6. | Determine the size of $\widehat{\boldsymbol{V}}.$ Show all steps of your working and give reasons.  |
|    | т   |
|    | $\frac{1}{2x}$  |
|    |   |
|    | $3x + 5^{\circ}$  |
|    | $U$ $\sqrt{25^{\circ}}$ $V$   |
|    | ••••••  |
| 7. | Determine the size of <i>x</i> . Give reasons.  |
|    | ••••••  |
|    | ······· / x /   |
|    |   |
|    |   |
|    |   |
|    | ••••••  |

Maths\_LB\_gr8\_bookA.indb 241 2014/07/03 10:54:36 AM

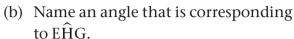
#### **GEOMETRY OF STRAIGHT LINES**

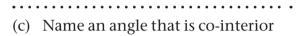
1. Study the diagram alongside:

with EĤG.

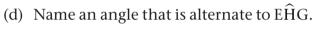


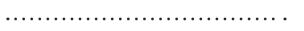


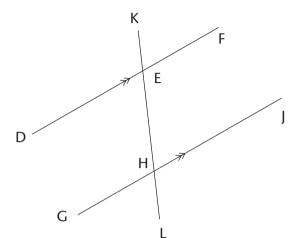










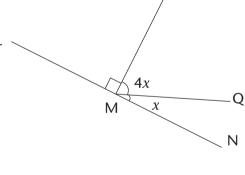


2. Determine the size of *x* in each of the following diagrams. Show all steps of working and give reasons.

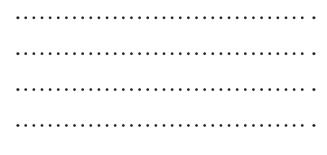
(a)

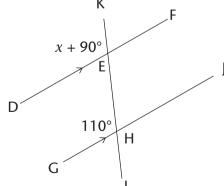




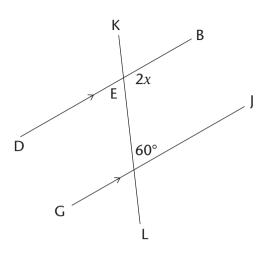


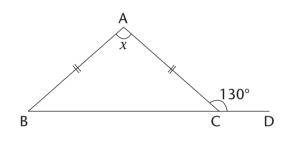
(b)

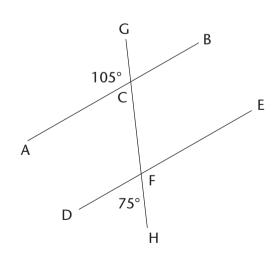




(c) (d) (e) Are line segments AB and DE parallel? Prove your answer.







## **Assessment**

In this section, the numbers in brackets at the end of a question indicate the number of marks the question is worth. Use this information to help you determine how much working is needed. The total number of marks allocated to the assessment is 75.

| 1. | Simplify the following expressions:<br>(a) $5x^2 - 6x^2 + 10x^2$ | (1)     |
|----|--|---------|
|    | ••••••   | • • • • |
|    | (b) $4(3x-7)-3(2+x)$   | (2)     |
|    | ••••••   | • • • • |
|    | (c) $(-2a^2bc^3)^2 \div 4abcd$                                   | (3)     |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••                          | • • • • |
|    | (d) $\frac{2x(3x-15)}{3x}$                                       | (3)     |
|    |  | • • • • |
|    |  | • • • • |
|    | (e) $\sqrt[3]{108d^{15} \div 4d^6}$                              | (3)     |
|    |  | • • • • |
|    |  | • • • • |
|    | (f) $2[3x^2 - (4 - x^2)] - [9 + (4x)^2]$                         | (3)     |
|    |  | • • • • |
|    | ••••••   | • • • • |
|    |  |         |

| 2. | Find the value of $a$ if $b = 3$ , $c = -4$ and $d = 2$ :   |       |
|----|---|-------|
|    | (a) $a = b + c \times d$  | (2)   |
|    | ••••••  | • • • |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
|    |   |       |
|    | (b) $ab^2 = 2c - d \div 2$  | (3)   |
|    | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
|    | ••••••  | • • • |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
|    | ••••••••••••••••••  | • • • |
| 3. | Solve the following equations:  |       |
|    | (a) $-7x = 56$  | (2)   |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
|    | ••••••  | • • • |
|    | (b) $4(x+3) = 16$   | (2)   |
|    | ••••••  | • • • |
|    | ••••••  | • • • |
|    |   | • • • |
|    | ••••••••••••••••••  | • • • |
| 4. | Sipho, Fundiswa and Ntosh are brothers. Sipho earns Rx per month; Fundiswa earn R1 000 more than Sipho per month, and Ntosh earns double what Sipho earns. If | ns    |
|    | you add their salaries together you get a total of R27 000.   |       |
|    | (a) Write this information in an equation using $x$ .   | (2)   |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
|    |   |       |
|    | (b) Solve the equation to find how much Fundiswa earns per month.   | (2)   |
|    | •••••   | • • • |
|    | •••••   | • • • |

- 5. Construct the following figure using only a pencil, ruler and compass. Do not erase any construction arcs.
  - (a) An angle of  $60^{\circ}$
  - (b) The perpendicular bisector of line VW, where VW = 10 cm (3)

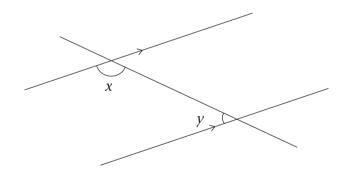
(c) Triangle KLM, where KL = 8.3 cm; LM = 5.9 cm and KM = 7 cm (4)

(d) Parallelogram EFGH, where 
$$E = 60^{\circ}$$
,  $EF = 4.2$  cm and  $EH = 8$  cm (4)

6. (a) What is/are the property/properties that make a rhombus different to a parallelogram? (1)
(b) True or false: a rectangle is a special type of parallelogram. (1)
7. Determine the size of *x* in each figure. Show all the necessary steps and give reasons.
(a) (3)

(b) (4)  $2x - 20^{\circ}$ (c) (3)

8. Study the following diagram. Then answer the questions that follow:

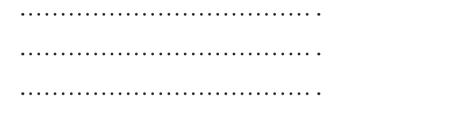


(a) Write down the correct word to complete the sentence: *x* and *y* form a pair of angles. (1)

(b) Write down an equation that shows the relationship between angles x and y. (1)

9. Determine the size of *x*, showing all necessary steps and giving reasons for all statements that use geometrical theorems:

| (4) |
|-----|
| (4) |









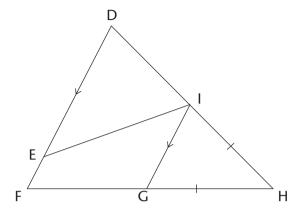




$$\mathsf{F} \xrightarrow{\mathsf{72}^\circ} \mathsf{F}$$

115°

10. Consider the following diagram, in which it is given:  $D\hat{E}I = 30^{\circ}$ , DE = EI,  $DF \mid\mid IG$ , and GH = IH.



| (a) Determine, with reasons, the size of $\hat{H}$ .  | (6)   |
|---|-------|
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
| •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••   | • • • |
| •••••   | • • • |
| (b) Which of the following statements is correct? Explain your answer.  | (2)   |
| <ul><li>(i) ΔDEI is similar to ΔGHI</li><li>(ii) ΔDEI is congruent to ΔGHI</li></ul>  |       |
| (iii) We cannot determine a relationship between $\Delta DEI$ and $\Delta GHI$ since there is not enough information given. |       |
|   |       |
| Statement is correct because  |       |
| Statementis correct because   | • • • |